

INTER-COLLEGIATE LATIN SERIES

BELLUM HELVETIUM

Boston University
College of Liberal Arts
Library

THE GIFT OF C.C. Dodge Class of '78

December 1919

NO. 478.2
L95-b

Inter-Collegiate Latin Series.

BELLUM HELVETIUM.

FOR BEGINNERS IN LATIN.

AN INTRODUCTION TO THE READING OF LATIN AUTHORS, BASED
ON THE INDUCTIVE METHOD AND ILLUSTRATING
THE FORMS AND CONSTRUCTIONS OF
CLASSICAL LATIN PROSE.

BY

CORNELIUS MARSHAL LOWE, M. A.,
PROFESSOR OF ANCIENT LANGUAGES IN WHEATON COLLEGE.

AND

NATHANIEL BUTLER, JR., M. A.,
PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY OF ILLINOIS.

BOSTON UNIVERSITY
COLLEGE OF LIBERAL ARTS
LIBRARY

CHICAGO:
ALBERT, SCOTT, & CO.
1891.

Dodge 472
Dec 17

Copyright, 1889,
BY ALBERT AND SCOTT.

University Press:
JOHN WILSON AND SON, CAMBRIDGE.

PA
2087
E892

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	5
TO TEACHERS	9
CAESAR AND THE HELVETIAN WAR	13
ABBREVIATIONS AND REFERENCES	16
INTRODUCTORY LESSON	17
PENSA I. - LXIV.	22
CAPITA 17-29	145
CONNECTED TEXT, CHAPTERS 1-29	187
APPENDIX	201
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	247
GLOSSARY	271

INTRODUCTION.

THIS book has been prepared to satisfy the demand of many teachers that Latin be studied as a living language; that it be made, at the beginning, a living subject for the student, and that the ability to speak and think in Latin be developed, along with translating and the acquiring of grammatical principles.

Its present form is due to a close observation of the needs of the student as determined by the actual use of these lessons in the classroom in years past, and to the uniformly resulting increase in enthusiasm, thoroughness, and amount of work done by the student.

To master the Latin, the Latin itself must be used. To the English student the theory must be presented in English, but the classroom practice may be largely in Latin, and thus the student will become familiar with the language by using it in thought and speech. To bring the student to this familiar use of the Latin the following plan is pursued:—

First: The meaning of the Latin words, as they occur in the order of the text, is given in English, and the student is required to give the equivalent in Latin. Thus, from the beginning, the Latin is made prominent as the language in which the student must make replies. Each vocabulary contains an entirely new set of words. It is expected that the pupil will thoroughly master the words of each lesson, so that he will recognize them as they occur again and again in the text. This saves the time of the student—so often wasted in looking up repeatedly the same word—and strengthens the memory, securing

vivid attention and knowledge. The general vocabulary at the end of the book should be useless, except, perhaps, for words which rarely occur.

Second: The composition of Latin words is early introduced and persistently continued. The derivation of English words from the Latin is considered of such great importance that a call for such derivative words is affixed to each vocabulary.

Third: The text of the first twenty-nine chapters of Caesar's Gallic War (up to the end of the Helvetian War) is used as presenting a model of perfect Latinity, sufficiently simple in form and structure for the beginner. It affords an illustration of the most important principles of the language, and prepares the student for a further study of Caesar. After thoroughly learning the words and translating into English, the student is advised to memorize the text for a few lessons, for the purpose of securing a model for the order of words as well as fixing the pronunciation. This may not be deemed advisable by all teachers; but it is earnestly urged, as essential to entire thoroughness, that the student become so familiar with the text that he can give the English for the Latin or the Latin for the English when pronounced by the teacher. The text of the twenty-nine chapters, given connectedly after the lessons, will be found convenient for reviews.

Fourth: For the convenience of teachers, and to give definite direction to the student's work, the substance of the text is given in short portions in dictation exercises, — the student being required to translate orally as pronounced by the teacher. This exercise gives opportunity to vary forms and constructions, but is intended mainly to insure familiarity with the text. The matter given in this exercise can easily be modified and extended at the pleasure of the instructor.

Fifth: The same text is used as the basis for English sentences to be written in Latin. While the thought of the passage is retained

in these sentences, their structure is so varied from the original as to afford thorough grammatical drill. No new words are introduced in this exercise, that no time may be lost in looking them up. This abundant practice, with the Caesarian models fresh in the mind of the student, produces readiness in Latin composition and correct style.

Sixth: The text is treated a fourth time in questions in Latin to be answered in Latin by the student. These questions, sometimes grammatical, sometimes on the facts of the passage under discussion, promote that mastery of the language which is to be attained only by its use in conversation. These questions are suggestive, and the teacher can vary them and increase their number, so as to give a large part of the instruction in this form if he desires.

Seventh: Paradigms of declensions and conjugations with the principles of syntax are introduced gradually, after the student has acquired words and sentences illustrating these forms and principles. The book is complete without a grammar, but references are continually made to the leading grammars, and the student is encouraged to study by subjects from illustrative examples. Each principle is explained but once, and when illustrations of the same fact appear, reference is made by figures to the first example and explanation. The explanation of the text and of grammatical principles is given in notes in connection with each lesson. These notes are to be thoroughly learned and recited, to insure thoroughness and prevent waste of time in frequently referring to the same subject.

No apology is offered for the use of words and terms in the colloquial exercises which are not found in classical authors, but only in grammars and commentaries. The use of such words and terms is necessary to conversation in Latin, and a knowledge of the later Latin is to be desired rather than to be avoided.

The authors desire to acknowledge their indebtedness to those who have kindly assisted them by reviewing the work and offering sugges-

tions. Special thanks are due to Professors S. C. Derby of the Ohio State University; M. L. Fox, of Minneapolis Academy; Ernest Sicard, of Cornell College, Ia.; W. W. Troup, of Catawba College, N. C.; J. D. S. Riggs, of Granville Academy, O.; and M. M. Fisher, D.D., LL.D., of the University of Missouri.

The favorable reception of this book by so many teachers, in the first year of its publication, and their co-operation in furnishing corrections for the present edition, calls for grateful recognition on the part of the authors. The statement of Conditional Sentences (General and Future) and of *cum* clauses has been modified in accordance with the treatment of Professor W. G. Hale in his Cornell University Studies in Philology.

TO TEACHERS.

THE lessons are intended to be studied in the order in which they occur, and in general it will be well to follow the order of the divisions as laid down. Especially, at first, explain in advance *how the lesson should be studied*, and direct the student's attention to the special points to be considered.

Insist from the beginning upon a correct pronunciation, and secure a ready and intelligent reading of the Latin text.

Require a thorough mastery of the vocabularies, and of each form and principle as taken up, and then review, *review*, REVIEW. Besides a daily review, have a general examination as often as once a month. In daily review much of the work may be done by the class rapidly in concert.

In the recitation of the lesson, —

1. Pronounce the English words in the vocabularies, and let the pupil give the corresponding Latin word; and if a compound, give its composition. Occasionally reverse the order, and make it Latin into English. If there are English derivatives, or nearly synonymous Latin words, let them be given in connection with each new word.

2. After translating (see 6. below) and the recitation of any memorized passages, break up the text of the lesson into short passages, and let the pupil answer as the words are pronounced by the teacher. This exercise should be mainly English into Latin, either using the exercise presented in the lesson, or abridging or extending or other-

wise varying it, so that the pupil will have such a complete knowledge of the text that he will promptly render English into Latin or Latin into English as soon as the words of either language are pronounced.

3. The writing of the prescribed sentences, both in an exercise book and on the blackboard, should be required throughout all the lessons.

4. The exercise for questioning in Latin, like the dictation exercise, is intended to be suggestive, and can easily be varied and amplified. This is a most inspiring as well as most profitable exercise. The glossary furnishes any terms necessary for its extension.

5. The principles and facts of the notes should be thoroughly learned and recited. Although frequent references are made to the same principle, it should not be necessary for the student to occupy his time in turning to the first explanation.

6. In translating, the student should be taught to ascertain the thought in the Latin order, and first translate the words literally, just as they stand in the text, noting the grammatical form of each word and all its possible constructions. Thus, *His rebus adducti et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti, constituerunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinerent comparare*, etc., should come to the mind in the order of the original: "By these things led and by the influence of Orgetorix thoroughly roused, they determined those things which to departing pertained to prepare." An excellent exercise for training the student to use the Latin order and prevent his picking out words in the attempt to find an English order, is to take a sentence (the teacher giving the meaning of the first form of unfamiliar words) and write it on the blackboard one word at a time, calling upon the student to give the meaning, word by word, as the sentence progresses. Here the student should be taught to think of the possible constructions of each word and to anticipate the following words, and yet reserve his decision until the end of the sentence is

reached.¹ After the thought has been ascertained in the Latin order, and it is desired to translate into English, teachers should insist that good idiomatic English be used and purely Latin idioms avoided. Thus the frequent use of the perfect passive participle in Latin is not to be imitated in English, but an active participle, or more frequently a clause, should be used instead, and the forms of *possum* should be rendered by the auxiliary words "can," "could." Even without an English translation's being made, the teacher can easily judge whether the pupil has an intelligent grasp of the author's meaning, by the manner in which the Latin is read, and by questions on syntax. And he can generally make the subject clear to the student by a proper reading of the text and explanation in Latin; provided, of course, that the student is familiar with the forms and meanings of the words, without which no successful work can be done.

The division into lessons has been made, largely, in reference to convenience in dividing the text or in the presentation of a subject. It is not intended that one lesson be assigned each day, but only as much as can be thoroughly mastered. With favorable circumstances, the work here laid down has been completed in two thirds of a college year. The mastery of the contents of this book, however, represents a considerably greater knowledge of the language than is usually acquired in one year, and so much time should be taken, if necessary, for thoroughness.

¹ This method is explained and illustrated in Professor W. G. Hale's pamphlet, "The Art of Reading Latin," published by Ginn & Co., in 1887; and there are valuable suggestions in the same line in the article "On Reading Latin" in "Allen's Latin Method," copyrighted by the same firm in 1876.

CAESAR AND THE HELVETIAN WAR.

THE name of Caius Julius Caesar has been called the greatest in history. This is because he did so much to move the world. He aimed at the highest objects, and succeeded in all that he attempted. He was Rome's greatest general. He laid the foundation of an empire which ruled the world for centuries, and from which have sprung, in a large degree, the modern nations of Europe. Although continually occupied with war and politics, he was also great in literature. We possess his two most important works, the "Commentaries on the Gallic War," which describe the conquest of Gaul, and the "Commentaries on the Civil War," which record his struggles with Pompey. The style of his works is characterized by great simplicity, conciseness, and vigor. Written also in the purest Latin, they furnish excellent models for the study of the language.

When Caesar was forty-two years old, — that is, in the year 58 B. C., — he set out for Gaul, ostensibly for the purpose of protecting Roman territory, but as the event showed, for the subjugation of the land. In nine years he subdued the whole of Gaul, and converted it into a Roman province. In the campaigns of these nine years he disciplined and attached to himself an army which made him afterward the master of Rome. The first Gallic people which Caesar encountered were the Helvetii, the inhabitants of modern Switzerland. The Helvetians thought their country was too small, and besides were harassed by the neighboring tribes of Germany, and so resolved to seek wider limits and a more peaceful home to the west, on the borders of the ocean. Before leaving their country they provided

themselves plentifully with provisions, and burned all their houses, some four hundred villages and twelve walled towns. By appointment they met at the southern point of Lake Geneva. There they assembled in the spring of 58 B. C. to the number of three hundred and sixty-eight thousand, of whom ninety-two thousand were men-at-arms. Under modern civilization, the same country now supports a population of two millions eight hundred and fifty thousand.

At Lake Geneva the Helvetii found their advance opposed by Caesar. Their most natural course was to cross the Rhone, passing through a corner of the Roman province in southeastern Gaul. The Helvetii sent a deputation asking permission to pass through the province without damage. To gain time, Caesar put them off to a second conference, and spent the time in constructing a line of fortifications along the Rhone, and then formally forbade their passage.

After vainly endeavoring to force a passage of the Rhone, the Helvetii, by arrangement with the Sequani, their neighbors on the northwest, proceeded to cross the Saone instead of the Rhone and thence to march westward. Caesar added five fresh legions to the four already at his disposal, and after about three fourths of the Helvetian troops had crossed the Saone, fell upon and cut to pieces the remainder. Efforts on the part of the Helvetii to procure terms of peace satisfactory to themselves proved unavailing, and after some minor contests, the final decisive battle was fought at the Aeduan town, Bibracte, now Autun. Caesar acknowledges that the battle was closely contested and for a long time doubtful, but in the end Roman arms and discipline won a victory that ended all the hopes of the Helvetii. At the command of Caesar they returned to their desolated homes, but with the loss of more than two thirds of their entire number. Remains of skeletons, ornaments, and arms have been unearthed on the field of the great battle near Autun.

BELLUM HELVETIUM.

ABBREVIATIONS AND REFERENCES.

THE lessons are indicated by Roman, and the notes by Arabic characters; thus, XIII., 1. = Lesson *thirteen*, note *one*. References to chapters are made by heavy-faced numerals, and to lines by lighter type; thus, **21**, 6 = chapter *twenty-one*, line *six*. Rem., remark; thus, III., rem. = lesson three, remark. The figures 1, 2, 3, 4, placed after the verbs, denote the conjugation; thus, porto (1) = *porto*, first conjugation. A. is for Allen and Greenough's Revised Latin Grammar; H. for Harkness's Standard Latin Grammar; App. for the Appendix. Other abbreviations are:—

abl. ablativus , <i>ablative</i> .	i. e. id est , <i>that is</i> .
abs. absolutus , <i>absolute</i> .	imp. imperativus , <i>imperative</i> .
acc. accusativus , <i>accusative</i> .	impf. (tempus imperfectum), <i>imperfect</i> .
act. (vox) activa , <i>active</i> .	indecl. indeclinabile , <i>indeclinable</i> .
adj. adjectivum , <i>adjective</i> .	ind., indie. indicativus , <i>indicative</i> .
adv. adverbium , <i>adverb</i> .	indir. disc. (oratio obliqua), <i>indirect discourse</i> .
c. cum , <i>with</i> .	inf. infinitivus , <i>infinitive</i> .
cap. caput , <i>chapter</i> .	irr. irregulare , <i>irregular</i> .
cf. confer , <i>compare</i> .	lit. litterate , <i>literally</i> .
com. (genus) commune , <i>common (gender)</i> .	M. masc. (genus) masculinum , <i>masculine</i> .
comp. comparativus , <i>comparative</i> .	N. neut. (genus) neutrum , <i>neuter</i> .
conj. conjunctio , <i>conjunction</i> .	nom. nominativus , <i>nominative</i> .
dat. dativus , <i>dative</i> .	p. pp. pagina , paginae , <i>page, pages</i> .
decl. declinatio , <i>declension</i> .	part. participium , <i>participle</i> .
def. (verbum) defectivum , <i>defective (verb)</i> .	pass. (vox) passiva , <i>passive</i> .
dem. (pronomen) demonstrativum , <i>demonstrative (pronoun)</i> .	pers. persona , <i>person</i> .
dep. deponens , <i>deponent</i> .	pf. (tempus) perfectum , <i>perfect</i> .
dir. disc. (oratio recta), <i>direct discourse</i> .	pl. plu. pluralis , <i>plural</i> .
e. g. exempli gratia , <i>for example</i> .	plpf. plusquamperfectum , <i>pluperfect</i> .
etc. et cetera , <i>and other (things), and so forth</i> .	(prep.) praep. praepositio , <i>preposition</i> .
et seq., ff. et sequentia , <i>and what follows</i> .	(pres.) praes. praesens , <i>present</i> .
F., fem. (genus) femininum , <i>feminine</i> .	pron. (pronomen), <i>pronoun</i> .
ff. <i>vid. et seq.</i>	rel. (pronomen) relativum , <i>relative</i> .
fut. (tempus) futurum , <i>future</i> .	sc. scilicet , <i>understand</i> .
gen. genetivus , <i>genitive</i> .	sing. singularis , <i>singular</i> .
ibid. ibidem , <i>in the same place</i> .	subj. subjunctivus , <i>subjunctive</i> .
id. idem , <i>the same</i> .	sup. superlativus , <i>superlative</i> .
	vid. vide , <i>see</i> .
	voc. vocativus , <i>vocative</i> .
	vocab. vocabularium , <i>vocabulary</i> .

BELLUM HELVETIUM.

INTRODUCTORY LESSON.

It is assumed that the student knows the name and significance of the parts of speech and of their forms, case, number, mode, etc. Such knowledge of the English language is essential in beginning the study of Latin.

I. The Latin language, the language of the ancient Romans, derives its name from the Latīni, or Latins, who once inhabited Latium in Italy. The modern languages of Italy, France, Spain, and Portugal are mainly derived from it, as well as about sixty per cent of the words of the English tongue.

II. The alphabet is the same as the English with **w** omitted. **J**, which was not introduced until the seventeenth century, is now omitted by many editors. **K**, **y**, and **z** seldom occur. The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u, y**. **J** and **v** are consonant forms of **i** and **u**. The diphthongs (double sounds) are **ae, au, ei, eu, oe, ui**. The principal divisions of the consonants are *mutes* (voiceless or explosive sounds), *liquids* (flowing sounds, **l, m, n, r**), *sibilants* (**s, z**), *double consonants* (**x** (*cs*) **z** (*ds*)), *semi-vowels* (**i, v**).

Of the mutes,

the labials (lip sounds) are **p, b, f** (*ph*), **v**;

the palatals (palate sounds) are **c** (*k*), **q, g, ch**;

the linguals (tongue sounds) are **t, d, th**. A. 1-4; H. 2-4.

III. The pronunciation of Latin differs in different countries. In America the methods most commonly employed are the Roman and the English. At present the Roman method is more largely followed, while the English method is retained by those who desire

to give special prominence to the principles of English pronunciation and to the derivation of English words from the Latin.

IV. By the Roman method every letter has always the same sound, as follows :

Vowels : **ā** as in *father* ; **ǣ** as in *idea*.
ē “ *rein* ; **ě** “ *net*.
ī “ *machine* ; **ĭ** “ *bodily*.
ō “ *holy* ; **ŏ** “ *obey*.
ū as *oo* in *moon* ; **ŭ** “ *full*.
ȳ like French *u* or German *ü*.

A long vowel marked ¯ is counted as equal to two short ones marked ˘.

Diphthongs : **ae** like *aye* or **ai** in *aisle* ; **oe** like *oy* ;
au like *ow* in *now* ; **ei** as in *eight* ;
eu like *ew* ; **ui** like *we* (*oo'ee*).

Consonants : **c** and **g** always hard, as in *come*, *gun*.

j like *y*, **s** sharp as in *sale*, *lips* ; **v** like *v* or *w* ;
qu as in English ; **bs**, **bt** like *ps*, *pt* ; **ph** like *f* ; **ch**
 like *k*. A. 16 ; H. 6, 7.

V. In the English method the sounds are generally the same as in English.¹

1. Thus, vowels have their long English sound —

a. In final syllables ending in a vowel, as **se**, **da**, but unaccented **a** as in *America*.

b. In all syllables before a vowel or diphthong, as **deus**, **deōrum**.

c. In penultimate syllables (the last but one), and in unaccented syllables not final before a single consonant, or before a mute followed by a liquid ; as **frater**, **dolōris**, **consulis**, **patrem**.

2. In words like **Achaia**, **Pompeius**, **i** preceded by an accented **a**, **e**, **o**, or **y**, and followed by another vowel, has the sound of *y* ; thus, **A-ká-ya**, **Pom-pé-yus**.

¹ If the English method of pronunciation be adopted, it is recommended that it be learned by actual practice with portions of Latin text, the following rules being used for reference, and not for recitation.

3. Vowels have their short English sounds —

a. In final syllables ending in a consonant; but final **es** is pronounced *ease* and final **os** as in *dose*.

b. In all syllables before **x** or two consonants, except a mute and a liquid; e. g. **texit**, **templum**.

c. In all accented syllables not penultimate, before one or more consonants except in words like *moneo*, *acies*, *deleo*; i. e. where accented *a*, *e*, or *o*, comes before a single consonant (or a mute and a liquid) followed by *e*, *i*, or *y* before another vowel, the long sound is used.

4. Diphthongs: **ae** and **oe** are pronounced as *e*, **au** as in *laud*, **ei** and **ui** like long *i* (thus, **huic** and **cui** are pronounced *hike* and *ki*), **eu** as in *neuter*.

5. Consonants: **c** and **g** are soft (like *s* and *j*) before **e**, **i**, **y**, **ae**, **oe**, **eu**, and hard in other situations. **C** and **t** before **i**, often have the sound of *sh* but the hard sound is retained after **s**, **t**, and **x**. **Ch** is always hard, like *k*. Final **s** after **e**, **ae**, **au**, **b**, **m**, **n**, and **r**, is pronounced like *z*.

a. In **tibi** and **sibi** the **i** in both syllables is short, as in **city**.

VI. Each word contains as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs. In dividing words, a consonant is generally joined to the following syllable; but compound words should show their component parts. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultimate*; the next to the last, the *penult* (paene and ultima); the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

VII. A syllable is long in quantity if it contains a long vowel or diphthong, or if its vowel is followed by **j**, **x**, or **z**, or any two consonants except a mute and a liquid. A syllable is short if its vowel is followed by another vowel, a diphthong, or the aspirate **h**. The syllable is common in poetry, i. e. either long or short, when a short vowel is followed by a mute and liquid. In prose such a syllable is always pronounced short.

VIII. Words of two syllables always have the accent on the first.

Words of more than two syllables have the accent on the penult if it is long (*vid.* VII.), but if short, on the antepenult.

It will thus be seen that the quantity of the penult determines the accent of any Latin word of more than two syllables. It is therefore necessary to know the quantity of that syllable only, in order to pronounce a Latin word with certainty. In this book long penults only will be marked; and even then, only where the principles laid down in VII. would not fix the quantity of the syllable. Penults not marked, except those provided for in VII. (where the vowel stands before *j*, *x*, *z*, or any two consonants) are to be regarded as short.

The terms *long* and *short* as applied to quantity are not to be understood as indicating the *sound* of the vowel, but as indicating that a longer or shorter time was given by the Latins to the vowel sound.

NOTE. — Teachers are advised at this point to turn to some page of the text and require the pupils to apply these principles by pronouncing Latin words.

IX. The order of words in a Latin sentence is best learned by observation. After the text has been examined the student should observe how far the following principles are verified, and in connection with the models of the text, apply them in writing Latin sentences.

1. In a Latin sentence the relations of the words are indicated by their *form*, and great liberty is allowed in the order of their arrangement; e. g. *Puer amat matrem*, *Puer matrem amat*, *Matrem puer amat*, *Amat matrem puer*, all mean *The boy loves his mother*. The *form* of *puer* shows that it is in the nominative case, and therefore is the subject; and the *form* of *matrem* shows that it is in the case of the object; so that whatever be the order of the words, there can be but one meaning to the sentence, so long as the form of each word remains unchanged. Contrast the English arrangement in these respects.

2. While much more liberty is allowed in the arrangement of Latin than of English words in a sentence, there are nevertheless some general principles which Latin usage has established and which are varied only for a definite reason:

a. The usual order in a Latin sentence is, 1, subject; 2, modifiers of the subject; 3, modifiers of the verb; 4, verb.

b. Governed and dependent words usually stand before the words on which they depend ; but

c. A genitive usually follows its word.

d. The indirect object usually stands before the direct.

e. Adjectives generally prefer the place after their words.

f. When an adjective and a genitive modify the same word, the order is *adjective, genitive, noun* ; e. g. *an old friend of the Romans, vetus Romanōrum amīcus.*

g. Adverbs stand before their verbs, but **quoque** always follows its verb.

h. When a noun modified by an adjective is governed by a preposition of one syllable, the order is *adjective, preposition, noun* ; e. g. *magna ex parte, qua de causa.*

i. **Enim, vero, autem, quoque, quidem**, never stand at the beginning of a sentence or clause.

j. The words **ne . . . quidem** (*not even*), used to emphasize a word, receive the emphatic word between them ; e. g. *not even the Romans, ne Romāni quidem* (*not the Romans even*).

k. Any word is made emphatic by being placed in an unusual position. A desire for emphasis is, therefore, the chief reason for modifying the usual order of Latin words. The flow of the sentence no doubt had much to do with the choice and arrangement of its words. The individual peculiarities of authors would also produce variety in order.

PENSUM PRIMUM.

Memorize this and each of the following vocabularies, so that you can instantly name or write the Latin equivalent for the English word, or the English equivalent for the Latin word. In learning a language it is absolutely necessary to learn the words.

VOCABULARIUM.

lesson	pensum	the Belgae	Belgae
first	primum	other, another	aliam
vocabulary	vocabularium	the Aquitani	Aquitāni
Gaul	Gallia	(a) third	tertiam
is	est	who, those who	qui
every, all, as a whole	omnis	of themselves,	
		their own	ipsōrum
divided	divīsa	tongue, language	lingua
into	in	Celts, the Celts	Celtae
parts	partes	the Gauls	Galli
three	tres	our, (in) ours	nostra
of which	quarum	are called	appellantur
one	unam	inhabit	incolunt

From **omnis** are derived such words as *omnibus*, *omniscient*. From **aliam** (*alius*) such words as *alien*, *alias*. Name other English words derived from these words and the other words in this vocabulary.

Gallia est omnis divīsa in partes tres; quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitāni, tertiam, qui ipsōrum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur.

Translate the sentence into English.

Recite and write from memory the entire sentence.

Give orally the Latin equivalents for:

Gaul — Gaul as a whole — Gaul is divided — is divided — into parts — into three parts — Gaul as a whole is divided into parts —

of which—one—one of which—inhabit—the Belgae inhabit—one of which the Belgae inhabit—the Belgae inhabit one—the Aquitani inhabit another—the Celtae inhabit a third—who (*those who*)—who are called Gauls—who are called Celts—in their own language—in our language—the Celts are called Gauls in our language—in their own language they are called Celts.

Answer in Latin :

In quot (*how many*) partes Gallia divīsa est? Nonne (*is not*) Gallia est in partes tres divīsa? Ita (*yes*), Gallia est in partes tres divīsa. Qui (*who*) unam partem (*part*) incolunt? Belgae unam partem incolunt. Qui aliam partem incolunt? Qui tertiam partem incolunt? Nonne (*do not*) Belgae unam partem incolunt? Certe (*certainly*) Belgae unam partem incolunt. Quo nomine (*by what name*) Celtae in lingua nostra appellantur? Celtae in lingua nostra Galli appellantur.

NOTES.

1. In Latin a question is sometimes answered by repeating in the answer the substance of the question asked; e. g., observe the answers to the questions above; or the verb or the emphatic word may be repeated. A. 212; H. 352.

2. The interrogative particle **nonne** expects an affirmative answer, and is rendered *is not, are not, do not*, etc. Thus, **nonne verum est?** is translated *is it not true?* or, *it is true, is it not?*

3. Be exact in the pronunciation and accent of each word. When in doubt consult the introductory lesson or the grammars. A. 16–19; H. 5–18. The teacher will explain that **qui** and **quarum** are forms of the same word. Grammatical points in the first lessons, however, must not detract from the acquisition of a vocabulary.

4. The Latin has no article. *The, an, or a* must therefore be supplied by the student in translating, whenever the sense requires it.

PENSUM SECUNDUM.

Review and recite all of the first lesson.

VOCABULARIUM.

second	secundum	from	ab, a
these	hi	the Garonne	Garumna
(in) customs	institūtis	river	flumen
(in) laws	legibus	the Marne	Matrona
among	inter	and	et
themselves	se	the Seine	Sequana
differ	differunt		
differ from one	inter se diffe-		
another	runt		

Nomina derivatīva Anglica (*Name the English derivatives*).

In this lesson **omnes**, **lingua**, **Gallos**, **Aquitānis**, **Belgis**, and **dividit** are omitted, because forms of these words are given in Lesson First. The teacher will explain briefly concerning the Latin cases, and in particular that the ablative is used where the English employs the objective case with such prepositions as *with*, *by*, *from*, *in*. Also how **dividit** differs from **divisa**, **omnes** from **omnis**, etc. But only such grammatical points should be given as the pupil demands.

Hi omnes lingua, institūtis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitānis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit.

Translate the above.

Recite and write from memory.

In Anglicum verte (*Translate into English*):

Hi — hi omnes — hi omnes differunt — inter se differunt — Galli et Aquitāni et Cetae inter se differunt — tres partes differunt — Aquitānos et Gallos Garumna flumen dividit — Matrona unam partem dividit — Gallos et Belgas Matrona et Sequana dividit — Hi populi (*nations*) lingua et legibus inter se differunt.

Voce in linguam Latīnam verte (*Orally translate into the Latin language*):

These all differ — these differ in customs and language — all these inhabit Gaul (*Galliam*) — the Garonne River separates the Gauls from the Aquitani — the Marne and Seine separate two (*duas*) parts from each other — all these are called Gauls in our language.

Latīne responde (*Answer in Latin*):

Qui inter se differunt? Quo modo (*how*) inter se differunt? Qui lingua, institūtis, legibus differunt? Nonne Belgae et Galli differunt? Quod (*what*) flumen Gallos ab Aquitānis dividit? Quot partes in Gallia sunt (*are*)?

If the time of recitation permits, it will be profitable to extend these exercises by introducing some new words.

PENSUM TERTIUM.

Cases.

Rem. The Latin has six cases:

a. The nominative (**casus nominatīvus**) corresponding to the nominative in English.

b. The genitive (**casus genetīvus**) generally corresponds to the English possessive or the objective with the preposition *of*.

c. The dative (**casus datīvus**) is the case of the indirect object, and is often translated like the English objective with the preposition *to* or *for*.

d. The accusative (**casus accusatīvus**) is the case of the direct object, corresponding generally to the English objective.

e. The vocative (**casus vocatīvus**) is the case of direct address.

f. The ablative (**casus ablatīvus**) corresponds to the English objective with such prepositions as *by*, *in*, *from*, *with*, and is also used as the object of some Latin prepositions.

g. The locative (**casus locatīvus**), denoting the place *in which*, exists in a few nouns. A. 31, *a-g*; H. 45, 2.

Recognosce (*review*) **pensa** (*lessons*) I. et II.

VOCABULARIUM.

third	tertium	very far	longissime
bravest	fortissimi	are distant	absunt
are	sunt	by no means, least	minime
on account of this	propterea	and (enclitic)	-que
because	quod	to, towards	ad
and also	atque	them	eos
civilization, culture	cultu	merchants	mercatores
refinement	humanitāte	often	saepe
(of the) province	provinciae	resort, visit	commeant

Derivatīva Anglica nomina (*Name the English derivatives*).

Horum and **omnium**, forms of which are previously given, are not repeated. The teacher in these cases will explain what the occasion demands.

Memoriter recita et scribe cum textu priore (*From memory recite and write with former text*):

Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitāte provinciae longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatores saepe comeant.

Voce verte in Latīnam linguam :

All these — of all these — the Belgae are bravest of all these — they are the bravest because they are distant — because they are very far distant — they are distant from the civilization — from the civilization and refinement of the province — merchants visit them — they visit them least often — the merchants visit the Gauls — the Gauls are distant from the Aquitani — the Celts and the Gauls are distant from each other — the Belgae are bravest because the Garonne River separates them — the merchants visit three parts — the bravest are called Belgae.

Latīne responde :

Qui fortissimi erant (*were*)? Nonne Belgae fortissimi erant? Quid (*why*) Belgae fortissimi erant? Qui (*what*) populi (*peoples*)

in Gallia vivunt (*live*)? Quod flumen Gallos ab Aquitānis dividit? Mercatoresne fortissimi sunt?

In connection with the translation of the text of these three lessons name the cases of the nouns used. Let the question and answer be in Latin, e. g. **In quo casu est nomen Gallia** (In what case is the noun *Gallia*)? The pupil will usually be able to name the case correctly by the relation suggested by the translation as subject or object, or as used with *of*, or with *to* or *for*, or with *by*, *in*, *from*, *with*, etc.

NOTES.

1. Words like **-que** and **-ne**, which are not used separately, but only when affixed to other words, are called enclitics. The accent falls on the syllable before the enclitic. A. 19, *c*; H. 18, 2, 1).

2. **-ne** is not translated, but is simply used in asking the question. A. 210, *a*; H. 351, 2; I. 1. Cf. **nonne**, I. 2.

3. Observe that of the three connectives given, **et**, *and*, simply connects words or clauses; **-que**, which is always enclitic, connects more closely than **et**; **atque** generally gives prominence to what follows. A. 156, *a*; H. 554, 2.

PENSUM QUARTUM.

Pensa I., II., III., recognosce.

VOCABULARIUM.

fourth
those things which
weaken, enervate
minds, courage
extend, tend
bring in, import
nearest
Germans

quartum
ea quae
effeminandos
animos
pertinent
important
proximi
Germānis

across	trans
the Rhine	Rhenum
with	cum
with whom	quibuscum (-cum, <i>enclitic</i>)
continually	continenter
war	bellum
carry on, wage	gerunt

Anglica derivatīva nomina.

Memoriter scribe et recita (*Write from memory and recite*):

Atque ea quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent, important; proximique sunt Germānis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.

Voce in linguam Latīnam verte:

And also they import — those things which — which tend to weaken the courage — nearest — and they are nearest the Germans — they wage war continually — with whom they wage war — they wage war with the Germans — the Germans are very far distant from the Belgians — the Germans dwell across the Rhine — the Germans differ from the Gauls in language and customs — these and the Belgians are the bravest.

Latīne responde:

Quae (*what things*) mercatōres important? Ad quos (*whom*) ea important? Qui proximi Germānis sunt? Trans quod flumen Germāni incolunt? Quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt? Ubi (*where*) Germāni incolunt? Quod flumen est inter Belgas et Germānos? Cur (*why*) Belgae fortissimi sunt? Nonne Belgae proximi Germānis sunt?

NOTES.

1. Observe that **-nt** shows the third plural, and **-t** the third sing. of verbs.

2. Cf. **qui**, **quae**, and **quibus**, noting the part common to each, which is the stem (basis).

3. Observe the endings **-ibus**, **-i**, **-os**, **-is**, and any other endings you can recognize, and determine the case by the relation suggested by the translation. Thus **quibus** is ablative, being governed by a preposition meaning *with*. **Ea** is accusative, the direct object of a verb. For the use of cases see last lesson.

PENSUM QUINTUM.

First Declension.

Pensa priōra (*former*) **recognosce**.

Rem. 1. In Latin there are five declensions (*declinatiōnes*), often distinguished from each other by the final letter (characteristic) of the stem, and always by the termination of the genitive singular. A. 32; H. 47.

Rem. 2. In the first declension the stem vowel, or characteristic, is **a**, the gen. sing. ends in **-ae**. From the characteristic vowel, **a**, this is called the "**a** declension." A. 32; H. 47.

Learn thoroughly the paradigm of **causa** (*cause*), observing the stem (the base to which the endings are affixed), and the meaning of each case. Cf. III. Rem., *a-f*.

Causa (<i>cause</i>), f.		
Singular.		Termination.
Nom. causa	a cause	a
Gen. causae	of a cause	ae
Dat. causae	to or for a cause	ae
Acc. causam	a cause	am
Voc. causa	O cause, or thou cause	a
Abl. causā	by, from, in, with a cause	ā
Plural.		
Nom. causae	causes	ae
Gen. causārum	of causes	ārum
Dat. causis	to or for causes	is
Acc. causas	causes	as
Voc. causae	O causes, or ye causes	ae
Abl. causis	by, from, in, with causes	is

What four forms have the same endings? What two cases in the plural? What two in the sing.? How does the abl. sing. differ from the nom. sing.?

Inflect with the same endings as in **causa**, the nouns **Gallia**, **provincia**, and **lingua**; also **Matrona** and **Sequana** in the sing. and **Celtae** and **Belgae** in the plural. For other examples *vid.* A. 35; H. 48; App. 1. Hereafter nouns of the first declension will be given in the manner usually followed in vocabularies and lexicons.

VOCABULARIUM.

fifth	quintum
cause, reason	causa , -ae, f. (<i>note</i> 1.)
from, concerning, for	de , <i>praep. c. abl.</i> (<i>vid.</i> Abbreviations)
for this reason	qua de causa
the Helvetians (the natives of modern Switzerland)	Helvetii
also, likewise	quoque
remaining, the rest of	reliquos
(in) valor	virtūte
go before, precede, surpass	praecēdunt

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

Cum textu priore (*with the former text*) **recita** :

Qua de causa Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtūte praecēdunt.

In linguam Anglicam verte :

Qua de causa — Helvetii Gallos praecēdunt — eos (*them*) virtūte praecēdunt — Helvetii Belgas non (*not*) praecēdunt — Helvetii cum Belgis bellum gerunt — flumen Matrona Gallos et Belgas dividit — lingua inter se differunt — mercatōres Romanōrum ad eos commeant — omnis causa — linguīs — causa linguārum — ad provinciam pertinent — fortissimi in provincia sunt.

Voce in linguam Latīnam verte :

Cause, reason — for this reason — the Helvetians surpass — they surpass the remaining Gauls — the war of the Belgians and Celts —

the language of all these—the cause of the language—the reason is because they are distant—the language of the province of Gaul—they differ in the laws of the language—to the language—for the province—with a reason.

NOTES.

1. Nouns of the first declension are feminine excepting a few nouns like **Galba**, **scriba** (*clerk*), which may be known as masculine by their signification.

2. The termination consists of the case-ending united with the vowel. When a case-ending is added to a stem ending in a vowel, one of the vowels usually disappears, or else the two are contracted into one.

3. **Filia** (*daughter*) and **dea** (*goddess*) have the dative and ablative plural in **-ābus**, instead of **-is**, to distinguish these forms from the same cases of **filius** and **deus**.

PENSUM SEXTUM.

Second Declension.

Rem. In the second declension the stem vowel, or characteristic, is **o**; the gen. sing. ends in **-i**. From the characteristic vowel this is also called the “**o** declension.”

Learn thoroughly the paradigm of **animus** (*mind*) and **bellum** (*war*), observing the stem and the meaning in each case (cf. paradigm of **causa** and III. Rem.).

Animus (*mind*), M.

	Singular.	Termination.
Nom.	animus	us
Gen.	animi	i
Dat.	animo	o
Acc.	animum	um
Voc.	anime	e
Abl.	animo	o

Bellum (*war*), N.

	Singular.	Termination.
	bellum	um
	belli	i
	bello	o
	bellum	um
	bellum	um
	bello	o

	Plural.	Termination.	Plural.	Termination
Nom.	animi	i	bella	a
Gen.	animōrum	ōrum	bellōrum	ōrum
Dat.	animis	is	bellis	is
Acc.	animos	os	bella	a
Voc.	animi	i	bella	a
Abl.	animis	is	bellis	is

What three forms in **animus** have the same endings? In **bellum**? What two forms? These paradigms must be learned with rigid thoroughness and repeated again and again.

Like **animus** decline: **Gallus**, a Gaul; **locus**, a place; **vicus**, a village. Like **bellum** decline: **initium**, beginning; **regnum**, kingdom; **imperium**, power. For other examples *vid.* A. 38; H. 51; App. 2.

Hereafter nouns of the second declension will be given in the manner usually followed in vocabularies and lexicons.

VOCABULARIUM.

sixth	sextum	the Germans	Germāni, -ōrum, m.
almost	fere	the Gauls	Galli, -ōrum, m.
daily	quotidiānis	the Belgians	Belgae, -ārum, m.
battle	proelium, -i, n.	the Rhine	Rhenus, i, m.
strive, contend	contendunt		

Cum textu priōre recita :

Qua de causa Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtūte praecēdunt quod fere quotidiānis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt.

In linguam Anglicam verte :

Quod — quod contendunt — proeliis contendunt — fere quotidiānis proeliis — cum Germānis contendunt — Helvetii cum Germānis contendunt — animus Helvetiōrum — proelia cum Belgis — animi inter se differunt — legibus belli — proeliis praecēdunt — causae bellōrum — ea ad proelia important — cum bellis atque cum virtūte.

Voce in linguam Latīnam verte :

Because — because they contend in battle — in battle — in almost daily battles — a battle — a war — battles — wars — for a battle —

for battles — the courage of the Gauls — the province of Gaul — those things which pertain to wars — with whom they wage wars — the Rhine and the Marne — they contend in battle — the beginning (*initium*) of the battle — the beginnings of the battles — in the beginning of the war.

Latīne responde :

In quo casu (*in what case*) est nomen causa? Helvetii? Gallos? virtūte? proeliis? Cur (*why*) Helvetii reliquos Gallos virtūte prae-
cēdunt? Quibuscum Helvetii contendunt? Nonne cum Germānis contendunt? Quoties (*how often*) Helvetii cum Germānis contendunt? (*quotidiāno*).

NOTES.

1. Nouns of the second declension ending in **-us** are with very few exceptions masculine. Those ending in **-um** are neuter. The gender will be marked only when the exceptions occur. A. 39; H. 51; App. 19, I.

2. The characteristic **o** is weakened to **u** in the endings **-us** and **-um**, and to **e** in the voc., e. g. **anime**. The ending **-i** is for **-oi**, and **-is** for **-ois**. A. 38; H. 51, 2, 2).

PENSUM SEPTIMUM.

Declension of Adjectives.

Rem. In Latin, adjectives are inflected like nouns. They agree with the noun or pronoun in gender, number, and case. Adjectives like **magnus**, whose feminine terminations are like feminine nouns of the first declension, and whose masculine and neuter terminations are like masculine and neuter nouns of the second declension, are called adjectives of the first and second declensions.

Learn thoroughly the inflection of the adjective **magnus**, observing that the terminations are exactly the same as in **animus**, **causa**, and **bellum**.

Numerus singulāris (singular number).

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	magnus (<i>great</i>)	magna	magnum
Gen.	magni	magnae	magni
Dat.	magno	magnae	magno
Acc.	magnum	magnam	magnum
Voc.	magne	magna	magnum
Abl.	magno	magnā	magno

Numerus plurālis (plural).

Nom.	magni	magnae	magna
Gen.	magnōrum	magnārum	magnōrum
Dat.	magnis	magnis	magnis
Acc.	magno s	magna s	magna
Voc.	magni	magnae	magna
Abl.	magnis	magnis	magnis

Now decline the noun and adjective together thus: **causa magna, causae magnae**, etc. Also **animus magnus, animi magni, animo magno**, etc. But be sure that the student understands that the adjective does not agree with the noun in spelling, but in gender, number, and case. For other ex. *vid.* A. 81; H. 148, App. 6.

Hereafter adjectives of the first and second declensions will be given in the manner usually followed in vocabularies and lexicons.

VOCABULARIUM.

seventh	septimus, -a, -um
number	numerus, -i
masculine	masculīnus, -a, -um
feminine	feminīnus, -a, -um
neuter	neuter, -tra, -trum (<i>Gen. neutrius, etc.</i>)
our	noster, -tra, -trum
bravest	fortissimus, -a, -um
next, nearest	proximus, -a, -um
the rest of, remaining	reliquus, -a, -um
daily	quotidiānus, -a, -um
good	bonus, -a, -um

bad	malus, -a, -um
much, many	multus, -a, -um
institution, custom	institūtum, -i
Latin	Latīnus, -a, -um
Roman	Romānus, -a, -um
German	Germānus, -a, -um
English	Anglicus, -a, -um
American	Americānus, -a, -um
French	Francicus, -a, -um or Gallicus, -a, -um

In linguam Anglicam verte :

Belgae — Gallōrum omnium — fortissimi sunt, quod saepe proelio contendunt — nostrae linguae legibus — multa institūta differunt — magna bella gerunt — minime a cultu provinciae nostrae absunt — provincia magna est — bellum magnum est — flumen magnum eos dividit — mercatōres Americāni ad Galliam non commeant — flumen Rhenus proximum Germaniae est — quotidianis proeliis inter se contendunt.

Voce in linguam Latīnam verte :

For this reason the merchants often visit them — the three parts differ — many customs differ — they contend in a great battle — the causes of the war are many and great — our province — our provinces — in a large province — for great causes — in many battles — the English war — the Latin language — many lessons in the language of the Gauls — the remaining Germans differ in many customs.

NOTE.

Adjectives like **noster**, *our*, and **neuter**, *neither*, whose stems end in **-ro** do not add **s** for the nom. masc. The **o** is dropped and **e** is inserted before **r**. The vocative is the same as the nominative. In other respects the endings are the same as in **agnus**. A. 38, 82 ; H. 149, note and 150 ; App. 6, *b*.

PENSUM OCTAVUM.

Celeriter recognosce pensa priōra.

VOCABULARIUM.

eighth	octāvus, -a, -um
when, since	cum, quum (<i>conj.</i>) (<i>note 1.</i>)
or	aut
either . . . or	aut . . . aut
their own	suus, -a, -um (<i>note 2.</i>)
limits, boundaries	finibus
prohibit, keep away	prohibent
(they) themselves	ipsi
in	in, <i>praep. c. abl.</i> ; <i>cf. in, into, praep. c. acc.</i> (<i>note 4.</i>)
their, of them	eōrum, <i>cf. eos</i>
possess	obtinēre
it has been said	dictum est
beginning	initium, -i
takes	capit
the Rhone	Rhodanus, -i

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

In Anglicam linguam transfer et memoriter recita cum priōre textu :

Cum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt. Eōrum una pars, quam Gallos obtinēre dictum est, initium capit a flumine Rhodano.

In linguam Latīnam voce transfer ordine Latīna (*in the Latin order*) :

When — when they keep them away — they keep them away from their own boundaries — they either keep them away or wage war — in their own boundaries — in their boundaries — it has been said —

which it has been said the Gauls possess — one part of them takes its beginning from the river Rhone — they keep them from the Rhone — the Rhone is a river — they keep the Belgians and Helvetians from the Rhone — their beginning is great — it has been said (that) the Celts possess three parts — for this reason the Helvetians wage a great war — they fight with great courage — the courage of the Helvetians and Gauls is great — their own courage — their courage — their cause — they fight in daily battles with each other.

Inflect together **suum initium**.

Responde Latine :

Qui eos prohibent? Nonne Helvetii eos prohibent? A quorum (*whose*) finibus eos prohibent? Quot (*how many*) partes Galli obtinent? Ubi (*where*) una pars initium capit? Ubi bellum gerunt? Ignōro (*I do not know*). Ubi Galli incolunt? In quot partes est Gallia divīsa?

NOTES.

1. **Cum**, also spelled **quum**, is here a conjunction meaning *when*, and not the preposition meaning *with*. It can usually be easily distinguished by its position in the clause, while the preposition is regularly followed by a noun in the ablative case.

2. **Suus**, inflected like **magnus**, may mean *his, hers, its, their*, or *his own, her own*, etc. according to the gender and number of the subject. **Eōrum**, *of them, their*, need not thus refer to the subject of the verb.

3. Words like **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or*, used in pairs, are called correlatives.

4. **In**, with the abl., means *in*, i. e. rest in a place; with the acc. *to, into*, i. e. motion toward a place; thus **in finibus**, *in the boundaries*, but **in partes**, *into parts*.

PENSUM NONUM.

Penitus (*thoroughly*) **pensa priōra recognosce.**

VOCABULARIUM.

ninth	nonus, -a, -um
is bounded	continētur
the ocean	oceanus, -i
touches upon, reaches to	attingit
even, also	etiam
the Sequani	Sequani, -ōrum
the seven stars, the North	Septentriōnes
inclines, slopes	vergit
farthest, extreme	extrēmus, -a, -um
arise, begin	oriuntur

Anglica derivatīva nomina.

Memoriter recita cum priōre textu :

Continētur Garumna flumine, oceano, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; vergit ad septentriōnes. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur.

In linguam Anglicam verte :

Una pars continētur Garumna flumine — una pars oceano et finibus Belgārum continētur — una pars attingit etiam flumen Rhenum — tres partes undique (*on all sides*) continentur — eōrum una pars vergit ad septentriōnes — Belgae ab extrēmīs finibus oriuntur — ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur — in eōrum finibus oriuntur — Belgae fortissimi sunt et longissime absunt — una pars eos ab Helvetiis dividit et oceanum attingit.

Voce in linguam Latīnam verte :

One part is bounded — a part is bounded by the ocean and the boundaries of the Belgians — one part touches upon the river Rhine — the river Rhine bounds the Belgians — the river bounds three parts — one part is bounded by the river — the Belgians rise from

the farthest parts of Gaul — the farthest parts of Gaul are next to the Belgians — the farthest are called the Belgians — the merchants visit (*ad . . . commeant*) the North — Gaul slopes to the north — they rise — it has been said.

Latīne responde:

Quot partes Galli obtinent? Nonne Galli unam partem obtinent? Ubi initium capit? Quo modo (*how*) continētur? Quo (*by what*) flumine continētur? Ubi attingit? Quo vergit? Nonne ad septentriōnes vergit? Certe, ad septentriōnes vergit. Ubi Belgae oriuntur? Sumusne (*are we*) Belgae? Minime, non (*not*) sumus Belgae. Sumus Americāni. Vivisne (*do you live*) in septentrionibus (*at the North*)? Certe, in septentrionibus vivimus (*we live*).

NOTES.

1. Distinguish between the passive ending **-tur** in **continētur**, and the adverb ending **-ter** in **continenter**.

2. **Oriuntur** is a deponent verb, i. e. passive in form, but active in meaning.

3. **Ab** denotes position as well as separation and in the words **ab Sequanis et Helvetiis**, etc., may be rendered, *on the side of*.

4. **Sumusne**, III. 1.

PENSUM DECIMUM.

Third Declension.

Rem. 1. The stems of nouns of the third declension end in a vowel, **i**; or in a liquid, **l**, **n**, **r**; or in a mute. The termination of the gen. sing. is **-is**. A. 43, third declension; H. 56.

Rem. 2. Masculine and feminine nouns whose stems end in a mute form the nom. by adding **-s**. A lingual mute, **d** or **t**, is suppressed before **-s**. Thus the nom. **pars** is from the stem **part-**. A palatal mute, **c** or **g**, unites with **-s** forming **x**. Thus the nom. **lex** is from the stem **leg+s**. A. 44; H. 58, 1, 3; App. 3, a.

Rem. 3. In nouns whose stems end in a liquid, **l, n, r**, the nom. is the same as the stem, or a modification of the stem. Thus the nom. **consul** is from the stem **consul-**; **flumen**, *river*, is from the stem **flumin-**, the vowel **i** of the stem being strengthened to **e** to form the nom. A. 48; H. 60, 1, 3; App. 3, *b*.

Rem. 4. Masculine and feminine nouns whose stems end in a vowel, **i**, form the nom. by adding **-s** to the stem. Thus the nom. **finis**, *end*, *limit*, is from the stem **fini-**. The **i** of the stem is sometimes modified to **e** in the nom. Thus **nubes**, *cloud*, is from the stem **nubi-**. A. 51; H. 62, 64; App. 3, *c*.

Rem. 5. Consonant stems of the third declension may always be found by cutting off the termination of the gen. sing. Nouns with vowel (**i**) stems are parissyllabic, i. e. have the same number of syllables in nom. and gen. This may be explained by saying that the **i** of the stem and the **i** of the ending unite in one vowel.

Learn the inflection of **lex**, *law*; **finis**, *end*, *limit*; **flumen**, *river*.

Numerus Singulāris.

	lex (<i>law</i>), F.	finis (<i>end</i>), M.	flumen (<i>river</i>), N.
N.	lex	finis	flumen
G.	legis	finis	fluminis
D.	legi	fini	flumini
Ac.	legem	finem	flumen
V.	lex	finis	flumen
Ab.	lege	fine (i)	flumine

Numerus Plurālis.

N.	leges	fines	flumina
G.	legum	finium	fluminum
D.	legibus	finibus	fluminibus
Ac.	leges	fines	flumina
V.	leges	fines	flumina
Ab.	legibus	finibus	fluminibus

Cases alike : The nom. and voc. are always alike; neuter nouns have the nom., voc., and acc. alike, the neuter plu. ending in **-a**, as in the second declension. The dat. and abl. plu. are alike.

Let the student decline each noun thus far found in the text, except **cultu**, the teacher first naming the nom. and gen.

Learn the inflection of the adjective **omnis**, noting that the masc. and fem. genders are alike, and that the endings are the same as in **finis**. The neuter will be easily remembered by recalling the cases that have the same form.

Numerus singulāris.		Numerus plurālis.	
Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
N. omnis	omne	N. omnes	omnia
G. omnis	omnis	G. omnium	omnium
D. omni	omni	D. omnibus	omnibus
Ac. omnem	omne	Ac. omnes	omnia
V. omnis	omne	V. omnes	omnia
Ab. omni	omni	Ab. omnibus	omnibus

Decline the nouns **animus**, **causa**, **bellum**, **pars**, **flumen**, and others, in each case modifying it with the adjective **omnis**, thus: **omnis animus** — **omnis animi** — **omni animo** — **omnem animum**, etc. The student will need to remember that the adjective agrees with the noun, not in spelling, but in gender, number, and case. For a more full exhibition of forms, see the grammars or App. A daily review of these important forms will insure permanence of knowledge. Hereafter nouns and adjectives of the third declension will be given in the manner usually followed in vocabularies and lexicons.

NOTES.

1. Nouns of the third declension are in all three genders.

a. Nouns like **lex** (**leg + s**), with the nominative ending in **-s** following a consonant, are feminine. A. 65, *b*; H. 105.

b. Parisyllabic nouns (with the same number of syllables in nominative and genitive) ending in **-is** or **-es** are by rule feminine. **Finis** by exception is generally masculine. A. 65, *b*; H. 105.

c. Nouns like **flumen**, with the nominative ending in **-men**, are neuter. A. 65, *c*; H. 111.

2. Vowel stems include:

a. Parisyllabic nouns ending in **-is**, or **-es**, or **-e**.

b. Neuters in **-al** and **-ar**.

c. Monosyllabic nouns whose stems apparently end in two consonants. A. 53, 54; H. 65.

3. The vowel *i* of the stem is always seen in the genitive plural **-ium** and in the neuter **-ia**, and commonly in the ablative singular ending **-i** (sometimes **-e**). Occasionally it is found in the accusative singular **-im** for **-em**, and in the accusative plural **-is** for **-es**.

PENSUM UNDECIMUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

inferior, lower	inferior, -ius (<i>gen. inferiōris</i>), comparative of inferus, -a, -um. (<i>note 1</i>).
look, face	spectant
rising	oriens, orientis, (<i>adj.</i>)
sun	sol, solis, m. (<i>by exception</i>).
Aquitania	Aquitania, -ae
Pyrenees (<i>adj.</i>)	Pyrenaeus, -a, -um
mountain	mons, montis, m. (<i>by exception</i>)
Spain	Hispania, -ae
between	inter, <i>praep. c. acc.</i>
setting	occāsum

Nomina derivatīva Anglica.

Memoriter recita cum textu priore :

Pertinent ad inferiōrem partem fluminis Rheni ; spectant in septentriōnes et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenaeos montes, et eam partem oceani, quae est ad Hispaniam, pertinet ; spectat inter occāsum solis et septentriōnes.

Voce in linguam Latīnam verte :

They extend — they extend to the Rhine — to the lower part of the Rhine — they face to the north — they face to the east — they face to the west — to the north and east — between the east and west

— Aquitania extends to the Pyrenees mountains — the mountains are next to Spain — the merchants visit that part which is toward Spain — they import those things which tend to weaken the courage — one part of Aquitania extends to the mountains — the Aquitanians inhabit Aquitania — the Pyrenees mountains separate them from Spain — Spain faces toward the mountains and the ocean.

In linguam Anglicam verte :

Belgae spectant in septentriones et orientem solem, Aquitani inter occasum solis et septentriones spectant — una pars oceani est ad Hispaniam — Aquitani eam partem incolunt — ea pars ad septentriones vergit — Belgae fortissimi sunt, quod quotidianis proeliis contendunt — unam partem Gallos obtinere dictum est — Aquitani a cultu provinciae longissime absunt — Aquitani continentur Garumna flumine oceano, Pyrenaeis montibus — Galli minime ad Belgas saepe comitantur — Pyrenaei montes sunt magni.

Latine responde :

Ubi Belgae oriuntur? Quo Belgae pertinent? Ad quod (*what*) flumen dixisti (*did you say*)? In quam partem (*in what direction*) Belgae spectant? A quo flumine (*from what river*) Aquitania pertinet? Ad quos montes? Ad quem oceanum? (*Ad oceanum Atlanticum.*) Nonne Aquitania ad (*near*) Hispaniam est? Ita, vero (*yes, indeed*). Quo (*where*) vergit Aquitania? In quo casu est nomen (*the noun*) partem?

Inflect together **Pyrenaeus mons, oriens sol**, and **superior pars**, giving the meaning in each case, thus : **orientis solis**, *of the rising sun*.

NOTES.

1. The comparative degree of adjectives is formed by adding **-ior** to the stem of the positive, less the stem vowel, for the masculine and feminine genders, and **-ius** for the neuter. Thus **inferus**, stem **infer(o)** + **-ior** = **inferior**. The genitive adds the ending **-is** to this nominative. Inflect **inferior** according to the model given in the grammars. A. 86, 89; H. 162, 154; App. 8 a. Observe that the genitive plural ends in **-um**, not in **-ium**, and the neuter plural in

-a, not -ia as in parisyllabic words. Compare the other endings with those of **omnis**.

2. Adjectives like **oriens**, whose nominative form is the same for all genders, are called adjectives of one ending. For model of inflection *vid.* A. 85, *a*; H. 157; App. 7, *c*. Compare its endings with those of **omnis**. How is the nominative formed from the stem? X. Rem. 2.

3. The liquid stem **sol** has its nominative singular the same as the stem. Cf. X. Rem. 3.

PENSUM DUODECIMUM.

The preceding lessons cover the text of the first chapter of Caesar's "De Bello Gallico." The connected text will be found in the pages immediately following the lessons.

Review rapidly the text of this chapter and the vocabularies of the lessons covering it.

Write a translation of the chapter in good English.

Inflect the nouns and adjectives of this chapter, and name the case and number of the forms found in the text.

PENSUM TERTIUM DECIMUM.

Caput primum memoriter profer (*chapter first from memory recite*).

A rapid recitation of the first chapter each day is earnestly recommended. This need not occupy more than two minutes, and is invaluable in furnishing models and fixing in the mind the exact order of the words. Hereafter the memorizing of the text is not required; but the student should be so familiar with it as to render the Latin into English or the English into Latin when pronounced in short sentences by the teacher.

Recite rapidly the paradigms already learned.

VOCABULARIUM.

among	<i>apud, praep. c. acc.</i>
by far, far	<i>longe, adv.</i>
noted, well known	<i>nobilis, -e</i>
was	<i>fuit</i>
rich, wealthy	<i>dives, divitis</i>
richest, most wealthy	<i>ditissimus, -a, -um</i>
he, she, it, this, that	<i>is, ea, id (gen. ejus, dat. ei)</i>
Marcus Messala	<i>M. Messāla</i>
Marcus Piso	<i>M. Piso (gen. Pisōnis)</i>
consul	<i>consul, consulis, m.</i>
sovereignty, royal power	<i>regnum, -i</i>
desire	<i>cupiditas, -tātis, f.</i>
led on, influenced	<i>inductus, -a, -um</i>
conspiracy	<i>conjuratio, -ōnis, f.</i>
nobility, nobles	<i>nobilitas, -tātis, f.</i>
made	<i>fecit</i>

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.**In Anglicam linguam transfer :**

Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messāla et M. Pisōne consulibus, regni cupiditate inductus conjurationem nobilitatis fecit.

In Latīnam linguam voce ordine Latīna transfer :

Among the Helvetians — Orgetorix was the most noted — Orgetorix made a conspiracy of the nobility — in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso — influenced by a desire of royal power he made a conspiracy of the nobility — for this reason he was very wealthy — one part, influenced by a desire of refinement — Orgetorix was the most wealthy of the Helvetians.

Latīne responde :

Quis (*who*) apud Helvetios nobilissimus fuit? Nonne Orgetorix fuit dives? Certe, ditissimus fuit. Quis conjurationem fecit? Cur

conjuratiōnem fecit? Qui (*who*) consules erant (*were*)? Fuitne Orgetorix Helvetius (*a Helvetian*)? Erantne (*were*) M. Messāla et M. Piso Helvetii? Minime vero (*no, indeed*), Romāni erant. Fuitne Orgetorix divitior quam ego (*than I*)?

NOTES.

1. **Longe**, *adverb* from **longus**. Adverbs from adjectives of the second declension are formed by cutting off the nom. case-ending **-s** of the adjective and changing the stem vowel **o** to **e**; e. g. **Longus**, case-ending **-s**, stem vowel **o** changed to **e** gives **longe**. Cf. **longissime** and **minime**, III.

2. Observe that the phrase **M. Messāla et M. Pisōne consulibus** is grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence, i. e. it is an absolute construction. This construction is called the *ablative absolute* (**ablatīvus absolūtus**). The phrase may be rendered, *in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso*. A. 255 and *a*; H. 431, 4; App. 24, *a*.

3. The superlative degree (**gradus superlatīvus**) is formed by adding **-issimus**, **-issima**, **-issimum** to the stem of the positive clipped of the final vowel; e. g. **altus**, stem **alt(o)**, superlative **altissimus**. It is inflected throughout like **magnus**, VII. Observe that **ditissimus** is contracted for **divitissimus**. Cf. the formation of the comparative, XI. 1. For the superlative, A. 89; H. 162.

4. Learn the inflection of the demonstrative pronoun, **is**, observing when the stem **e** is modified to **i**, and in what respect it differs from **magnus**. A. 101; H. 186, IV.; App. 11, *d*.

5. Nouns ending in **-tas**, gen. **-tātis**, are of the feminine gender. Hereafter the gender of nouns in **-tas** will not be given. For formation of the nominative from the stem, *vid.* X. Rem. 2.

PENSUM QUARTUM DECIMUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

state, citizens of a state	<i>civitas, -tātis</i>
persuaded	<i>persuāsit</i>
that, so that, to	<i>ut, conj.</i>
from, concerning	<i>de, praep. c. abl.</i>
abundance, supply	<i>copia, -ae (in plu. forces)</i>
go forth	<i>exīrent (ut . . . exīrent, to go forth)</i>
to be, was	<i>esse</i>
very easy	<i>perfacilis, -e</i>
valor, bravery	<i>virtus, virtūtis, f.</i>
stood before, surpassed	<i>praestārent</i>
all, the whole	<i>totus, -a, -um (gen. totius)</i>
supreme power	<i>imperium, -i</i>
to get possession of	<i>potīri</i>

Nomina derivatīva Anglica.**In Anglicum transfer :**

Is, M. Messāla et M. Pisōne consulibus, regni cupiditāte inductus conjuratīōnem nobilitātis fecit, et civitāti persuāsit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exīrent : perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, totius Galliae imperio potīri.

Latīne voce redde (render) :

He persuaded — he persuaded the state — he persuaded the state to go forth — to go forth from their boundaries — he said (*dixit*) — he said it was very easy — since — since they surpassed — in valor — since they surpassed all in valor — of entire Gaul — to get possession of — to get possession of the government — to get possession of the government of entire Gaul — he said it was very easy to get possession of the government of entire Gaul.

Scribe Latīne :

1. In the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso, he per-

suaſed the citizens to go forth from their boundaries. 2. He ſaid (*dixit*) it was eaſy to get poſſeſſion of Gaul and the river Rhone. 3. The merchants often viſit them. 4. Since they ſurpaſſed all in valor. 5. It is very eaſy to get poſſeſſion. 6. One part, which it has been ſaid the Gauls poſſeſs, is bounded by the Rhone and ſlopes toward the north.

Anglice redde :

Persuāsit — civitatī persuāsit — Orgetorix civitatī persuāsit — ut exīrent — civitatī persuāsit, ut exīrent — de finibus — de finibus suis — cum copiis — cum omnibus copiis — ut cum omnibus copiis exīrent — perfacile — perfacile est — dixit perfacile eſſe — perfacile potīri — tota Gallia — totius Galliae — totius Galliae imperio potīri — cum — cum praestārent — cum praestārent virtūte — Galli virtūte Helvetiis praestārent — Messāla consul fuit — Caesar Romānus fuit — is Gallus est.

Latīne responde :

Cur (*why*) Orgetorix conjurationē nobilitātis fecit? Quis civitatī persuāsit? Quid (*what*) perfacile fuit? Quod flumen Gallos ab Aquitānis dividit? Cui (*what*) civitatī Orgetorix persuāsit? Civitatī Helvetiae. In quo casu est *civitātī*? *finibus*? *Gallia*? *imperio*?

Inflect together **Marcus Piso, finis suus, omnis copia, tota Gallia.**

NOTES.

1. **Esse**, literally *to be*, is in the infinitive mode, because it follows a verb of saying suggested by **persuāsit** in the preceding sentence. When an infinitive follows a verb of mental action, i. e. of declaring or thinking (expressed or understood), it should be translated into English by the indicative mode. Thus, **perfacile esse**, (*saying*) *that it is easy*. This is called the infinitive in indirect discourse (*oratio obliqua*). The direct discourse, i. e. the exact words of Orgetorix, would read **perfacile est**, *it is very easy*. Cf. *Gallos obtinere dictum est*, VIII. A. 336, I. 2; H. 522, 523, I.; App. 27, c.

2. The subject of the infinitive is always in the accusative. In rendering into English, translate by the nominative.

3. **Persuāsit**, *he persuaded*, has its object, **civitāti**, in the dative. This is true in general of verbs which affect indirectly the interest of their object either for good or ill. A. 227; H. 385, I. II.; App. 21, *d*. That **civitāti** is the dative of the indirect object can be seen by rendering **civitāti persuāsit**, *he used persuasive arguments to the state*.

4. **Potīri**, *to get possession of*, has its object, **imperio**, in the ablative. A. 249; H. 421, I.; App. 24, *o*. What is the regular case of the direct object?

5. **Totus** differs from **magnus** in having its genitive sing. termination **-ius**, and the dative **-i**. A. 83; H. 151, 1; App. 6, *c*. Cf. the pronoun **is** in the same cases.

PENSUM QUINTUM DECIMUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

easily	facile , <i>adv.</i> (<i>comp.</i> facilius)
on all sides	undique , <i>adv.</i>
place, position	locus , -i
nature, character	natūra , -ae
the Helvetians	Helvetii , -ōrum
from, out of	e , ex , <i>praep.</i> <i>c.</i> <i>abl.</i>
on one side	una ex parte
broad, wide	latus , -a , -um
high, deep	altus , -a , -um
field, country, territory	ager , agri , m.
Helvetian, of the Helvetians	Helvetius , -a , -um
one of two, the other	alter , altera , alterum , <i>gen.</i> -ius , <i>cf.</i> totius , XIV., 5.
third	tertius , -a , -um
(by) Lake Geneva	lacu Lemanno

Nomina derivatīva Anglica.

In Anglicum transfer :

Id hoc facilius eis persuāsit, quod undique loci natūra Helvetii continentur : una ex parte flumine Rheno, latissimo atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germānis dividit ; altera ex parte monte Jura altissimo, qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios ; tertia lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano, qui provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit.

In Latīnum voce transfer : ¹

Easily — more easily — he persuaded them the more easily — he persuaded them this the more easily on this account — nature — by the nature — by the nature of the place — is bounded — are bounded — the Helvetians are bounded by the nature of the place — on one side — on a second side — on a third side — high — deep — very high — a very high mountain — by a very deep river — which — which divides — which divides the field from the river — he persuaded the state — between — which is between — between the Sequani and the Helvetii — between the mountain and the river.

Latīne scribe :

1. This. 2. On this account the more easily he persuaded them. 3. Gaul is bounded on all sides by the nature of the place. 4. It is bounded on one side by the river Rhine, which is very wide and deep. 5. It is bounded on the second side by Mount Jura, which slopes toward the north. 6. The river Rhone separates our province from the Helvetians. 7. Orgetorix persuaded the state, because the place is bounded on all sides by a river. 8. In the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso he made a conspiracy of the nobility. 9. For this reason they wage war with the Germans. 10. Led on by a desire of supreme power, they contend in almost daily battles.

Latīne responde :

Quis eis persuāsit ? Quomodo Helvetii continentur ? Quod flumen una ex parte est ? Qui mons (*what mountain*) altera ex parte

¹ “**Latine**” means *in the manner of the Latins*. “**In Latinum**” means *into Latin*. We may say “**Latine redde,**” or “**In Latinum verte,**” or “**transfer.**”

est? Estne mons Jura altus? Certe, altissimus. Quod flumen provinciam Romānam ab Helvetiis dividit? In quo casu est *id? eis? parte? agrum? provinciam?*

NOTES.

1. **Id**, *this*, acc., direct object of **persuāsit**. What is the construction of **eis**? Cf. **civitāti**, XIV., 3.

2. The comparative degree of the adverb is the neuter of the adjective in the comparative degree. Thus **facilius**, the comp. of **facile**, is the neuter singular comparative of the adjective **facilis**, from which the adverb **facile** is derived. A. 92; H. 306.

3. **Ager**, stem **agro-**, a masculine noun of the second (o) declension, differs from **animus** in omitting the o of the stem in the nominative and vocative, and inserts **e** before **r**. A. 38; H. 51, 2.

PENSUM SEXTUM DECIMUM.

Pensa priōra recognosce :

Rem. 1. Nouns of the fifth declension form the nominative by adding **s** to the stem vowel. The gen. sing. ends in **-ei**. A. 72; H. 120.

Rem. 2. The characteristic **e** is shortened in the acc. sing. and generally in the termination **-ei**, when preceded by a consonant; e. g., **rei**; but **diēi**. A. 72, n; H. 120, 2.

Learn the paradigm of the noun **res**, *thing*, of the fifth declension. A. 72; H. 120; App. 5.

VOCABULARIUM.

thing, affair	res, rei, f.
it happened, it came to pass	fiēbat
from these things it happened	his rebus fiēbat
both . . . and	et . . . et

less	minus
widely	late, <i>adv.</i> (<i>cf.</i> longe, XIII., 1)
(they) wandered	vagarentur
neighbors	finitimi, -ōrum (<i>cf.</i> fines)
to bear into, to bring upon	inferre
could, were able	possent
from which consideration, in this respect	qua ex parte
man	homo, hominis
of making war	bellandi
desirous	cupidus, -a, -um
sorrow, grief	dolor, dolōris, m.
were affected	afficiebantur
were greatly annoyed	magno dolōre afficiebantur

Derivativa Anglica nomina.

In Anglicum transfer cum textu priore :

His rebus fiēbat, ut et minus late vagarentur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent ; qua ex parte homines bellandi cupidi magno dolōre afficiebantur.

In Latīnum voce transfer :

Things — those things — from those things — it happened — it happened that they wandered — that they wandered widely — less widely — it happened that they could bring war upon — to bring war upon their neighbors — the neighbors inhabit Gaul — one part of the neighbors — in this respect men desirous of making war — the men were greatly annoyed — he persuaded the men to bring war upon their neighbors — it happened that they went forth — for this reason they were affected the more easily.

Latīne Scribe :

1. It happened that the Belgae wandered less widely. 2. It happened that they surpassed all in valor and could more easily bring war upon the Helvetians. 3. In this respect the Germans, Gauls, and Romans were greatly annoyed. 4. Influenced by these things he made a conspiracy of the nobility.

Latīne responde :

Quid fiēbat? Qui minus late vagabantur? Quomodo homines afficiebantur? Qui lacus provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit? Quid fecit Orgetorix? In quo casu est nomen *dolōre*? *bellum*? *rebus*? *finitimis*?

NOTES.

1. Nouns of the fifth declension are of the feminine gender, except **dies**, usually masculine. The only nouns fully declined are **dies** and **res**.

2. Learn the inflection of the pronoun **hic**, *this*, comparing its endings with those of **magnus**, and **is**. A. 101; H. 186, I.; App. 11, *d*.

PENSUM SEPTIMUM DECIMUM.

Priōra pensa recognosce.

VOCABULARIUM.

before, for, in proportion to	pro , <i>praep. c. abl.</i>
great number, multitude	multitūdo , multitudinis , f.
moreover, but, yet	autem , <i>conj.</i>
glory	gloria , -ae
courage, bravery	fortitūdo , fortitudinis , f. (<i>cf. fortissimi</i>)
limited, narrow	angustus , -a, -um
to have	habēre
they thought	arbitrabantur
length	longitūdo , longitudinis , f.
thousands of paces, miles	millia passuum
two hundred and forty	ducenta et quadraginta , CCXL.
width	latitūdo , latitudinis , f. (<i>cf. latus</i>)
one hundred and eighty	centum et octoginta , CLXXX.
opened, extended	patēbant

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.**In Anglicum cum textu priōre transfer :**

Pro multitudine autem hominum et pro gloria belli atque fortitudinis angustos se fines habēre arbitrabantur, qui in longitudinem milia passuum CCXL., in latitudinem CLXXX. patēbant.

In Latīnum voce transfer :

Great number — in proportion to the great number — men — man — a great number of men — war — the glory of the war — the glory of bravery — to have — to have boundaries — to have narrow boundaries — they thought they had narrow boundaries — the boundaries extended — which extended — which extended in length — which extended in width — miles — one hundred miles — eighty miles — forty miles — which extended in length two hundred miles.

Latīne responde :

Qui angustos se fines habēre arbitrabantur? Ad quem finem (*how far*) Helvetiōrum fines patēbant? Quot milia passuum in longitudinem Helvetiōrum fines patēbant? Estne pensum difficile? Quota hora est (*what hour is it*)? Hora est tertia.

NOTES.

1. **Habēre**, *to have*, with the verb of thinking, **arbitrabantur**, is rendered by the indicative *had*. **Angustos . . . arbitrabantur**: *they thought they had narrow boundaries*. Cf. XIV., 1.

2. The noun ending **-tudo** added to the stem of the adjective makes the name of the quality; e. g. adjective **solus**, nom. **sol-i-tudo**, English, *solitude*. The nominative is formed from the stem by dropping **-in**, and adding **o**; cf. **flumen**, X., Rem. 3. Such nouns are of the feminine gender. Hereafter their gender will not be marked.

Trace the origin of multitude, fortitude, longitude, latitude.

Notice that the endings **-tas** and **-tudo** added to adjective stems form abstract nouns. If the stem vowel of the adj. is not already **-i**, it is changed to that vowel; e. g. **sol-i-tudo**.

PENSUM DUODEVICESIMUM.

Omnia priōra pensa recognosce praecipue (*especially*) textum, vocabularia, declinatiōnes:

Latīnum lege (*read the Latin*) et in Anglicum transfer:

Apud Helvetios Orgetorix vir nobilissimus fuit. Is conjuratiōnem nobilitātis fecit et civitatī persuāsit ut de finibus suis exīrent. Id facile fecit quod undique Helvetii continentur. Flumen Rhēnus una ex parte est, altera ex parte est mons Jura, et tertia ex parte est lacus Lemannus et flumen Rhodanus. Eōrum fines in longitudinem milia passuum ducenta et quadraginta patēbant.

As far as time will permit, question on the text of Chapter II.: e.g.

In quo casu est nomen *Helvetios*? In quo gradu comparatiōnis est *nobilissimus*? Qui est gradus positīvus (*what is the positive degree*)? Qui est comparatīvus gradus? Quae pars oratiōnis (*what part of speech*) est verbum *facile*? (Note that verbum means both *verb* and *word*). Cum quo casu *persuāsit* conjungitur (*with what case is persuāsit joined, i. e. what case does persuāsit govern*)? Quid, in lingua Anglica, significat *qua ex parte*? In quo numero est verbum *persuāsit*? Cum quo casu conjungitur verbum *potīri*? In qua constructiōne est *M. Messāla et M. Pisōne consulibus*? (*Ablativo absolūto.*) Quod genus verbi (*what kind of verb*) est *potīri*? (*Depouens verbum potīri est.*) Quae pars oratiōnis est *de*? (*De praepositio est.*) Nomina in hoc capite declīna (*inflect the nouns in this chapter*).

PENSUM UNDEVICESIMUM.

Rem. 1. For purposes of conjugation Latin verbs are divided into four classes, the division being based upon the final vowel of the present stem. Each of these classes is called a conjugation. There

are therefore four conjugations of Latin verbs, distinguished by the final vowel of the present stem, as follows :

First conjugation,	ā
Second “	ē
Third “	ě
Fourth “	ī

Rem. 2. Certain parts of the regular verb from their importance are called principal parts, and are always given in vocabularies and lexicons. They are the Present Indicative, the Present Infinitive, the Perfect Indicative, and the Supine or the Perfect Participle. The latter will be given in this book. The Present Infinitive ends in **-re**, and always contains the stem vowel before that syllable. This form is therefore of great importance, as it shows to which conjugation the verb belongs ; e. g., **amāre**, **monēre**, **tegěre**, and **īre**.

Rem. 3. Learn the inflection of the verb **amo** in the active voice. A. 128 ; H. 205 ; App. 12. Learn first the principal parts, **amo**, **amāre**, **amāvi**, **amātus**, with their meaning. By cutting off **-re** of the present infinitive **amāre**, **-i** of the perfect indicative **amāvi**, and **-us** of the perfect participle **amātus**, will be found the present stem **ama-**, the perfect stem **amav-**, and the perfect participle stem **amat-**. **Am-** is the root of **amāre**, **a** the stem vowel of the first conjugation.

Learn the personal endings for the indicative and subjunctive modes.

Singular.	Plural.
-o or -m (I)	-mus (we)
-s (thou, you)	-tis (you)
-t (he, she, it)	-nt (they)

Rem. 5. When **-o** is the ending of the first person, the preceding vowel unites with it. Thus **amo** is for **ama-o**.

NOTES.

1. The present indicative is formed of the root **am-**, the stem vowel **-a**, and the personal endings, **-o**, **-s**, **-t**, **-mus**, **-tis**, **-nt**.

2. The imperfect tense has a tense sign **-ba-** before the personal endings, and **-m** instead of **-o** in the first person sing.

3. The future tense has a tense sign **-bi-** and the first person ending in **-o**. In third plural the vowel **i** of the tense sign is shortened **u**. Thus **amābunt** for **amābi-nt**.

4. In the subjunctive the first person always ends in **-m**.

5. In the present subjunctive the stem vowel **-a** is changed to **-e**.

6. The imperfect subjunctive has a tense sign **-re-** before the endings.

7. The perfect indicative has the perfect stem **amav-** (**v** added to the present stem) and the following endings:

Singular.	Plural.
-i (I)	-imus (we)
-isti (thou, you)	-istis (you)
-it (he, she, it)	-ērunt, ēre (they)

8. The pluperfect indicative has the perfect stem **amav-**, a tense sign **-era-**, and the personal endings, **-m**, **-s**, **-t**, **-mus**, **-tis**, **-nt**.

9. The future-perfect indicative has the perfect stem **amav-**, a tense sign **-eri-**, and the personal endings, **-o**, **-s**, **-t**, **-mus**, **-tis**, **-nt**.

10. The perfect subjunctive has the perfect stem **amav-**, a tense sign **-eri-**, and the regular endings.

11. The pluperfect has the tense sign **-isse-** with the same stem and endings.

12. The present imperative, which is used only in the second person, has, in the singular, the present stem without an ending. The plural ending is **-te**. The future imperative has the endings:

Singular.	Plural.
2d Pers. -to	-tōte
3d Pers. -to	-nto

13. The present infinitive has **-re** added to the present stem. The perfect infinitive adds **-isse** to the perfect stem. The future infinitive consists of the future active participle with **esse**.

14. The present participle adds **-ns** to the present stem. The future participle adds **-ūrus** to the perfect participle stem.

15. The gerund (*gerundium*) has the endings of a neuter noun of the second declension in the singular number in the gen., dat., acc., and abl. cases, viz., **-ndi**, **-ndo**, **-ndum**, **-ndo**.

16. The supine (*supīnum*) has the endings of a noun of the fourth declension in the singular number in the acc. and abl. cases. These endings, viz., **-um**, **-u**, are added to the perfect participle stem.

The student will observe that the other conjugations have the same personal endings, and vary mainly by changes in the stem vowel. The passive forms will be given in another lesson, but the understanding of the indicative and subjunctive modes will be made very easy by observing that in the tenses formed from the present stem the personal endings are **-or** or **-r**, **-ris**, or **-re**, **-tur**, **-mur**, **-mini**, **-ntur**, instead of the active endings **-o**, or **-m**, **-s**, **-t**, **-mus**, **-tis**, **-nt**, and by observing that the perfect tenses are formed from the perfect participle and some form of the verb **sum**.

Go over chapters I. and II., naming the mode, tense, number, and person of the verbs, giving the root, stem, tense sign, personal endings, thus: **patēbant**, imperf. ind. plu., root **pat-**, stem vowel **-ē**, tense sign **-ba**, personal ending **-nt**.

PENSUM VICESIMUM.

In this and the following lessons the principal parts of the verb will be given in the manner generally followed in vocabularies and lexicons, except that the perfect participle, ending in **-us**, will be given, instead of the supine, ending in **-um**. The student will distinguish the conjugation by the connecting vowel, as shown in the present infinitive: 1st conjugation, **-āre**; 2d, **-ēre** (*ē longa*); 3d, **-ēre** (*ē brevis*); 4th, **-īre**.

VOCABULARIUM.

lead to, influence	adduco , -ducere , -duxi , -ductus
influenced by these things	his rebus adducti
authority, influence, power	auctoritas , -tātis
Orgetorix	Orgetorix , Orgetorigis
thoroughly move, rouse	permoveo , -ēre , -mōvi , -mōtus

set together	arrange, determine	constituo, -ere, -stitui, -stitutus
to, towards, for		ad, <i>praep. c. acc.</i>
depart, set out		proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum
to departing		ad proficiscendum (<i>note 2</i>)
prepare, procure		comparo, -āre, -āvi, -ātus
draught animal, beast of burden		jumentum, -i (<i>jungo, join</i>)
cart		carrus, -i
as possible		quam, <i>adv. (note 1)</i>
great		magnus, -a, -um (<i>comp. major, sup. maximus</i>)
number		numerus, -i
buy up, purchase		coemo, -emere, -ēmi, -emptus (<i>cum + emo, buy</i>)

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam cum textu priōre verte :

His rebus adducti et auctoritāte Orgetorigis permōti constitutūrunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent comparāre, jumentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coemere.

Voce in linguam Latīnam verte :

These things — by these things — influenced by these things — aroused — aroused by the authority — they determined — they determined to prepare those things — those things which — which pertained to departing — they determined to purchase — to purchase a number of draught animals — to purchase a number of carts — as great a number as possible — they determined to purchase as great a number of carts as possible — it happened — in this respect — three miles.

Latīne scribe :

1. The Helvetians, influenced by these things, determined to prepare these things. 2. They determined to prepare those things which pertained to departing. 3. They determined to purchase as great a number as possible of carts and draught animals. 4. They determined to bring war upon their neighbors. 5. Aroused by a

desire of royal power, they determined to procure a multitude of men.
6. He persuaded them to procure the supreme power of the state.

Latīne responde :

Cujus auctoritatē (*by whose influence*) Helvetiī permōti sunt?
Quae facere (*to do*) constituērunt? Quot carrōrum coemere constituērunt?
In quo tempore (*in what tense*) est constituērunt? (In tempore perfecto.) In quo casu est verbum *rebus*?

Inflect together **haec res**.

NOTES.

1. The adv. **quam**, used with the superlative (with or without **possum**, *be able*), is rendered *as possible*. Thus: **quam maximum numerum**, *as great a number as possible*. A. 93, *b*; H. 170, 2.

2. Deponent verbs, i. e. verbs with a passive form but an active signification, have certain active forms. Thus **proficiscendum** is the gerund (an active form) of the deponent verb **proficiscor**. A. 135; H. 231, 1; App. 13.

3. The gerund is a verbal noun, corresponding in some of its uses to the English verbal noun in *-ing*. For formation *vid.* XIX., 15.

PENSUM VICESIMUM PRIMUM.

Priōra pensa recognosce.

VOCABULARIUM.

sowing, planting	sementis , -is, f.
make, do	facio , facere , fēci , factus
road, way, journey	iter , itineris , n.
plenty, abundance, supply	copia , -ae (plu. <i>forces, troops</i>)
grain	frumentum , -i
hold out, be at hand	suppeto , - petere , - petīvi <i>vel</i> - petii , - petitus (sub + peto)
peace	pax , pacis

friendship	amicitia, -ae
confirm, establish	confirmo, -āre, -āvi, -ātus
complete, accomplish	conficio, -ere, -fēci, -fectus (cum + facio)
period of two years	biennium, -i (bis, twice, + annus, year)
(for) them or themselves	sibi
enough, sufficiently, sufficient	satis, adv. et adj.
lead, guide, consider	duco, ducere, duxi, ductus

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam transfer cum textu priōre :

(Constituērunt) sementes quam maximas facere, ut in itinere copia frumenti suppeteret, cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmāre. Ad eas res conficiendas (*vid. notes*) biennium sibi satis esse duxērunt.

Voce Latīne redde :

They determined — to make — they determined to make plantings — as great plantings as possible — that — a supply — that a supply might be at hand — grain — a supply of grain — they determined to establish peace — to establish peace with the nearest states — establish peace — I established peace and friendship — for accomplishing these things — they considered — two years — they considered that two years were (*esse*) sufficient — sufficient for themselves.

Scribe Latīne :

1. Led on by these things they determined to establish peace and friendship with the state. 2. They determined to purchase carts and to make plantings in order that (*ut*) a supply of grain might be at hand on the journey. 3. They considered that three parts were sufficient for them.

Latīne responde :

Qui sementes facere constituērunt? Cur (*why*) sementes fecērunt? In qua forma est *comparāre*? (Infinitīvus praesens.) In qua forma est *facere*? *suppeteret*? (Subjunctīvus imperfectum.) Quid est temporis signum (*tense sign*)? (-re.) Quot annos (*how many years*)

satis esse duxerunt? Qui biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt? Cum quibus civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmaverunt?

Inflect the verb **confirmo** in full. Inflect together **proximis civitatibus** and **eas res**, beginning with the first forms.

NOTES.

1. **Conficiendas**, *to be completed, to be accomplished*, as an adjective agrees in gender, number, and case with **res**. The phrase **ad . . . conficiendas** may be freely rendered, *for accomplishing these things*, or, *to accomplish these things*. Cf. **effeminandos animos**, IV. The gerundive is formed by adding **-nd** to the present stem, and has the endings of the adj. of the first and second declensions.

2. Gerund and Gerundive.

a. The gerund is the verbal noun; as a noun it is governed, as a verb it governs. In the expression **ad eas res conficiendum**, **conficiendum** is the verbal noun in the acc. case, governed by **ad**. In turn **conficiendum** governs **eas res**, and the expression means, literally, *for accomplishing these things*.

b. The gerundive, however, is the future passive participle, and, like all participles, it has the syntax of an adj., agreeing with, not governing, its noun or pronoun. In the expression **ad eas res conficiendas**, **conficiendas** is the gerundive in the acc. case, agreeing with **res**; **res** is governed by **ad**, and the expression means, literally, *for these things to be accomplished*. The two constructions are used to express the same notion; but while the former (gerund) seems more like the English idiom, the Latin almost always prefers the latter (gerundive).

3. **Esse**: how translated with a verb of saying? XIV., 1.

4. Learn the different forms of the reflexive pronoun **sui**. A. 98, 2, *b*; H. 184; App. 11, *b*. Observe that the forms are exactly the same in sing. and plur., and that the number must be determined from the number of the verb. Cf. the possessive adj. **suus**, VIII., 2.

PENSUM VICESIMUM SECUNDUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

in, on ; into, to, against, for	<i>in, praeep. c. abl. et acc.</i>
year	annus, -i
departure	profectio, -ōnis, f., cf. proficiscor
law	lex, legis
choose, select	deligo, -ligere, -lēgi, -lectus
is chosen	deligitur
embassy, legation	legatio, -ōnis, f.
undertake, begin	suscipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus (sub, under, + capio)
convince, persuade	persuadeo, -ēre, -suāsi, -suāsus
Catamantaloedes	Catamantaloedes, -is, a chieftain of the Sequani
son	filius, -i
father	pater, patris
much, many	multus, -a, -um
obtain, possess, hold	obtineo, -ēre, -tinui, -tentus

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.**In linguam Anglicam transfer :**

In tertium annum profectiōnem lege confirmant. Ad eas res conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur. Is sibi legatiōnem ad civitatē suscēpit. In eo itinere persuādet Castico, Catamantaloedis filio, Sequano, cujus pater regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat

Latīne redde :

For accomplishing these things — they considered that two years were sufficient — they establish — they establish a departure — a departure for the third year — of the year — is chosen — journey — on the journey — on that journey — he persuaded — he persuades Casticus — he persuades the son of Catamantaloedes — he persuades Casticus the Sequanian — father — whose father — of whose father —

whose father had held — had held the royal power — the royal power among the Sequanians — had possessed for many years — I obtain — to possess — possessed — led on by these things — for departing — a departure — to depart.

Latīne scribe :

1. The father of Casticus had possessed the royal power many years. 2. The Helvetians, aroused by Orgetorix, determined to depart. 3. On that journey Orgetorix undertook to persuade the son of Catamantalocdes. 4. Casticus the Sequanian, whose father was holding the royal power, undertook an embassy to Gaul.

Latīne responde :

Quis ad eas res conficiendas deligitur? Quid suscēpit Orgetorix? Nonne legationem ad civitātes suscēpit? Cui persuāsit Orgetorix? Cujus filius erat Casticus? Quot annos ejus pater regnum obtinuit? (Ignōro. Multos annos regnum obtinuit.)

NOTES.

1. Nouns like **profectio**, ending in **-io**, gen. **-iōnis**, denote action, and are of the fem. gender. They are formed from the perf. part. stem; e. g., **proficiscor**, *I depart*, perf. part. **profectus**, whence **profect-io**, *departure*. Cf. **vocatio** from **voco**, **oratio** from **oro**. The declension stem of these nouns appears in English without change; e. g., *vocation*, *oration*.

2. **Filius** (*son*), the possessive **meus**, and proper names in **-ius** have the vocative in **-i** (for **-ie**); e. g. **fili**, **mi**, **Claudi**.

3. Determine from the verb whether **sibi** here means *for himself* or *for themselves*, XXI., 4.

4. **Castico**, why dative? XIV., 3. **Ad eas res conficiendas**, construction? XXI., 2, b.

5. **Multos annos**, the acc. because denoting *time how long*. A. 256; H. 379; App. 22, e.

PENSUM VICESIMUM TERTIUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

from, by	<i>a vel ab, praep. c. abl. (cf. ex et de)</i>
a body of old men, senate	<i>senātus, -us, m. (senex, old man)</i>
people	<i>populus, -i</i>
Roman	<i>Romānus, -a, -um</i>
friend	<i>amīcus, -i</i>
had been called	<i>appellātus erat</i>
occupy, seize	<i>occupo (1)</i>
who, which, what	<i>qui, quae, quod (gen. cujus, dat. cui)</i>
formerly, before	<i>ante, adv. aut praep. c. acc.</i>
likewise, also	<i>item, adv. (cf. etiam)</i>
Dumnorix	<i>Dumnorix, Dumnorigis. An Aeduan</i> chief, brother of Divitiacus
brother	<i>frater, fratris</i>
time	<i>tempus, temporis, n.</i>
chief place, leadership	<i>principātus, -us, m.</i>

Nomina derivatīva Anglica.**In linguam Anglicam verte cum textu priōre :**

Et a senātu populi Romāni amīcus appellātus erat, ut regnum in civitatē sua occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigi Aeduo, fratri Divitiaci, qui eo tempore principātum in civitatē obtinēbat (persuadet).

Voce in Latīnum verte :

Senate — by the senate — the senate of the Roman people — a friend — he had been called friend — I call a friend — they had called a friend — he persuades — he persuades Casticus — I seize — to seize the royal power — he persuades Casticus to seize the royal power — the royal power in his state — which — which he had had — which his father had had — his father had had formerly — also — he also persuades — he also persuades Dumnorix — he persuades Dumnorix

the Aeduan — he persuades the brother — brother — brothers — the brother of Divitiacus — he persuades the brother of Divitiacus — at that time — of the time — was holding the chief place — the chief place in the state — I hold the chief place.

Latīne scribe :

1. He persuaded Casticus the Sequanian, whose brother was a friend to the Helvetians. 2. Casticus will occupy the royal power in his own state. 3. He persuades Dumnorix, the brother of Divitiacus, who was a friend of the Roman people. 4. Dumnorix, the Aeduan, at that time was holding the leadership in his own state.

Latīne responde :

* Quis Castico persuāsit? Ubi Castico persuāsit? Quis erat Casticus? Quis ejus (*his*) pater erat? Quis amicus appellātus erat? Quid obtinēbat Dumnorix? In quo casu est *Castico*? *cujus*? *pater*? *senatu*? *tempore*? In quo tempore est *habuerat*? *obtinerat*? *occupāret*? In quo modo est *occupāret*? Quid est temporis signum (*the tense sign*)? (-re-).

Inflect together **civitāte sua** and **eo tempore**, beginning with nom. sing. forms.

NOTES.

1. Learn the inflection of nouns of the fourth declension. A. 68; H. 116; App. 4. From the characteristic vowel **u** it is sometimes called the **u** declension. The stem vowel **u** appears in all cases, except that it is generally weakened to **i** before the plur. dat. and abl. ending **-bus**. Masc. and fem. nouns of this declension have the nom. ending **-us**, and neuter nouns the nom. ending **-u**. As almost all nouns of this declension ending in **-us** are masc. the gender will be marked only in the exceptions. Cf. **cultu** et **lacu**.

2. **Tempus**, *time*, in its grammatical use signifies *tense*.

3. Learn the inflection of the relative pronoun **qui**, comparing its endings with those of **magnus**, **totus**, and **is**. A. 103; H. 187; App. 11, e.

PENSUM VICESIMUM QUARTUM.

Priōra vocabularia celerrime (*very quickly*) recognosce.

VOCABULARIUM.

and also	ac, conj. (<i>cf. atque</i>)
very greatly, most, especially	maxime, adv. (<i>cf. magne et major</i>)
common people, plebeians	plebs, plebis, vel plebes, -ēi, f.
the same	idem, eadem, idem (<i>gen. ejusdem</i>)
acceptable, beloved	acceptus, -a, -um
to attempt	ut . . . conarētur
daughter	filia, -ae (<i>cf. filius</i>)
marriage	matrimonium, -i
give	do, dāre, dedi, datus

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.**In linguam Anglicam verte :**

In eo itinere persuādet Castico, Catamantaloedis filio, Sequano, cujus pater regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat et a senātu populi Romāni amīcus appellātus erat, ut regnum in civitāte sua occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigi Aeduo, fratri Divitiaci, qui eo tempore principātum in civitāte obtinēbat ac maxime plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conarētur, persuādet, eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat.

Voce in Latīnum verte :

He persuades Dumnorix — he persuades Dumnorix to attempt the same — the leadership — was holding — was holding the leadership — beloved — beloved by the common people — especially beloved by the common people — Dumnorix was especially beloved by the common people — that he attempt the same — he persuades Dumnorix to attempt the same — I give — you give — she gives — he gives to him — he gives to him his daughter — he gives his own daughter —

Orgetorix gives — Orgetorix gave — he had given — he gave the cause.

Latīne scribe :

1. At that time he persuaded Casticus to seize the royal power among the Sequanians. 2. Dumnorix determined to do the same thing. 3. He gave his daughter in marriage to Dumnorix, who had held the leadership in the state. 4. I will give (my) father, brother, son, and daughter to him.

Inflect the verb **do**, noting the tenses formed from the perfect and perfect participle stems. For formation of the verb from the stems, *vid.* XIX.

NOTE.

Eo tempore : time *at* or *within which* is expressed by the abl., generally without a preposition. App. 24, *p.* How is time *how long* expressed? XXII., 5.

PENSUM VICESIMUM QUINTUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

he, that (used of what is remote)	ille, illa, illud (<i>gen.</i> illīus, <i>dat.</i> illi)
prove, show	probo (1)
an attempt	conātum, -i (<i>cf.</i> conarētur)
make, do, thoroughly accom-	perficio, -ere, -fēci, fectus (<i>per</i> +
plish, complete	facio)
himself, herself, itself	ipse, ipsa, ipsum (<i>gen.</i> -īus, <i>dat.</i> -i)
doubtful	dubius, -a, -um
that not, but that, <i>after words of</i>	
<i>doubt</i> , that	quin, <i>conj.</i>
most, especially	plurimum (<i>pos.</i> multo <i>vel</i> multum ;
	<i>comp.</i> plus) <i>cf.</i> maxime
army	exercitus, -us
win over, gain	concilio (1)
he promises that he will win	se conciliatūrum confirmat

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam verte :

Perfacile factu esse illis probat conāta^r perficere propterea quod ipse suae civitātis imperium obtentūrus esset ; non esse dubium quin totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii possent ; se suis copiis suoque exercitu illis regna conciliatūrum confirmat.

Voce in Latinum verte :

To do — very easy to do — he shows — he shows them — he shows them that it is — he shows that it is very easy — very easy to accomplish — to accomplish the attempts — he himself — he himself intended to get possession — the supreme power — his own state's supreme power — doubtful — he shows that it is doubtful — he shows that it is not doubtful — doubtful that — that the Helvetians were the most powerful — plenty — troops — by his own troops — by his own army — he promises — he promises that he will win — I promise — Casticus promises to accomplish the attempts.

Latīne scribe :

1. He showed them it was very easy to accomplish the attempts. 2. He showed that he himself intended to get possession of the royal power in the state. 3. He was showing that it was (*esse*) not doubtful that (*quin*) the Helvetians were the most powerful. 4. They promised that they would win the state by their own army. 5. They give their daughters in marriage to them.

Latīne responde :

Nonne facile factu esse illis probat ? Qui totius Galliae plurimum poterant ? Nonne Helvetii plurimum totius Galliae poterant ? Quid Orgetorix confirmāvit ? Potesne (*can you*) conāta perficere ? (Certe, possum.)

NOTES.

1. The future active participle combined with some form of the verb **sum** denotes intended or future action. Thus **obtentūrus esset** may be rendered, *would get possession of*, or *intended to get*

possession of. This form of the verb is called the *first* or *active periphrastic* conjugation. A. 129; H. 233, 496, II. n. 2; App. 14. It is here used because in the subj. proper there is no future tense.

2. **Factu**, *to do*, the abl. of the supine, is used with a few adjectives and nouns to show *in what respect* the statement is true. **Perfacile . . . perficere**: *he shows them that to accomplish their attempts is a very easy (thing) to do.* A. 303, Rem.; H. 547, N. 1.

3. **Conciliatūrum**; supply **esse**. Why inf.? Cf. XIV., 1. Cf. **non dubium esse**; **factu esse illis probat**; **esse duxērunt**; **quam Gallos obtinēre dictum est**.

4. Learn the inflection of the demonstrative pronoun **ille**, contrasting its meaning with **hic** and its endings with those of **is** and **magus**. A. 101; H. 186, III.; App. 11, *d*. Observe that **ipse**, *self*, has exactly the same endings except in the nom. and acc. of the neut. sing.

PENSUM VICESIMUM SEXTUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

speech, oration	oratio , -ōnis
faith, pledge	fides , -ei
oath	jusjurandum , juris-jurandi , n.
strong, vigorous	firmus , -a, -um
hope	spero (1)

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam verte cum textu priōre :

Hac oratiōne adducti, inter se fidem et jusjurandum dant, et regno occupāto per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos, totius Galliae sese potiri posse sperant,

Voce in Latīnum verte :

Influenced by these things — influenced by this speech — they give — they give to each other — they gave an oath and a pledge — they will give a pledge — having seized the royal power — they hope — they hope to be able — they hope to be able to get possession — to get possession of entire Gaul — people — peoples — through three very strong peoples — three very strong men — Orgetorix was very strong.

Latīne scribe :

1. Influenced by these speeches they gave a pledge and oaths to each other. 2. When they had seized the royal power they hoped they could (**posse**) get possession of the government of all Gaul. 3. Aroused by this speech, they determined to get possession of as great a number of carts as possible. 4. They hoped to be able to establish peace and friendship with the nearest state. 5. On that journey Orgetorix gives an oath to Casticus in order that (**ut**) a supply of grain might be at hand. 6. He hopes he can (**posse**) persuade Casticus to give (**ut . . . det**) to him his daughter in marriage.

Latīne responde :

Quid inter se dant? Nonne fidem et jusjurandum dant? Qui inter se fidem et jusjurandum dant? In qua constructiōne est *regno occupāto*? (Ablativus absolūtus.) Quae pars oratiōnis est *per*? (*Per* est praepositio.) Cum quo casu conjungitur? (Cum casu accusativo.) In quo gradu comparatiōnis est *potentissimos*, — positivo, aut comparativo, aut superlativo? Ex quo capite (*chapter*) est pensum hodie (*to-day*)? Estne pensum longum, aut breve? Nonne pensum breve est? Potesne (*are you able*) Latīne loqui (*to speak*)? Paulum (*a little*). In quo genere (*in what gender*) est nomen *oratio*, — masculīno, aut feminīno? In quo genere est *fides*? *jusjurandum*? *regno*? *populos*? *Galliae*?

Inflect in the active voice the verb **spero**.

NOTES.

1. **Jusjurandum**, *oath*, is a compound noun, composed of **jus**, a neuter noun of the third decl. and **jurandum**, a neuter noun of the second decl. Both parts are inflected. The only plur. forms are the nom. and acc.

2. **Regno occupāto**: the abl. absolute may here be rendered by a clause, *when they had seized the royal power*, or by an active participle, *having seized the royal power*. A noun and a participle in the abl. is the most common form of this construction. A. 255, *b, d*; H. 431, 1, 2; App. 24, *a*. Cf. **M. Messāla M. Pisōne consulibus**, XIII. 2.

3. **Potīri**, *to get possession of*, contrary to its ordinary use, here takes its object, **Galliae**, in the gen. A. 249, *a*; H. 410. V. 3. Cf. **imperio potīri**. XIV. 4. App. 24, *o*.

4. **Posse**; why inf. and how translated? XIV. 1.

5. Learn the tenses formed from the present stem, **es-**, of the verb **sum**. A. 119; H. 204; App. 15.

PENSUM VICESIMUM SEPTIMUM.

Vocabularia et formas recognosce.

Learn the inflection of the verb **amo** in the passive voice. A. 129; H. 206; App. 12. First learn the personal endings and observe very carefully the following remarks on the formation of the tenses.

1. Personal endings (**terminatiōnes personāles**).

Singular.		Plural	
-or, -r	I	-mur	we
-ris, -re	thou	-mini	you
-tur	he, she, it	-ntur	they

2. The present tense (**tempus praesens**) is formed from the root **am-**, the stem vowel **-a**, and the above personal endings. It will be observed that the first person ends in **-or**. The imperfect tense

(**tempus imperfectum**) has the same stem, a tense sign (**signum**) **-ba-**, with the same endings, except the first person which ends in **-r**. The future tense (**tempus futūrum**) differs in having the tense sign **-bi-** and the first person ending in **-or**, **i** being weakened to **e** in the second person sing. and changed to **u** in the third plural. The student will observe that, excepting the personal endings, these forms are exactly the same as in the active voice. The same is true in the present and imperfect subjunctive.

3. The perfect tense (**tempus perfectum**) is formed by adding to the perfect passive participle the present tense of the verb **sum**. The pluperfect tense (**plusquamperfectum**) adds the imperfect tense of **sum**, and the future perfect, the future tense of **sum**. In the same way the perfect subjunctive has the perfect participle and the present subjunctive of **sum**, and the pluperfect, the imperfect subjunctive of **sum**.

4. The present imperative has the same form as the second person of the present indicative, the sing. ending in **-re**. The future imperative adds **-r** to the active endings and has no second person in the plural number.

5. The present infinitive, except in Conj. 3, ends in **-ri**, instead of **-re** as in the active. The perfect infinitive adds **esse** (the present infinitive of **sum**) to the perfect participle. The future infinitive adds **iri**, infinitive of **eo** to the accusative of the supine. This form is seldom used.

6. The perfect participles and the gerundive being adjectives of the first and second declensions, have the same endings as the adjective **magnus**. The student will observe that the gerund (**gerundium**) is a neuter noun of the second declension, with but four forms, while the gerundive (**gerundivum**), which is the future participle passive, has all the endings of the adjective. Go over the text of the preceding chapters and point out the passive forms.

PENSUM VICESIMUM OCTAVUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

report, information	indiciū, -i (per indiciū = per indices, through informers)
to report, announce	enuntiō (1)
character, custom	mos, moris, m., in plu. mores, morals, customs.
chain, bond	vinculū, -i
say, tell, speak	dico, dicere, dixi, dictus
to plead a case	causam dicere
bring together, compel	cogo, cogere, coēgi, coactus
condemn	damno (1)
punishment, penalty	poena, -ae
follow	sequor, sequi, secūtus sum
it was proper, or necessary,	oportēbat
fire [it behooved	ignis, -is, m.
to burn to ashes, cremate	cremo (1)

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam verte cum textu priōre :

Ea res est Helvetiis per indiciū enuntiāta. Moribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coegērunt: damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat ut igni cremarētur.

Voce in Latīnum verte :

This thing — this thing was reported — was reported to the Helvetians — was reported through (*per*) informers — the Helvetians reported — customs — in accordance with their customs — they compelled — they compelled Orgetorix — they compelled Orgetorix to plead his case — to plead his case from chains — I condemn — to condemn — I have condemned — condemned — it behooved — it behooved that the punishment follow — it behooved that the punishment follow the condemned (man) — that — that he be burned

to ashes — that he be burned to ashes by fire — they condemned — they condemned Orgetorix.

Latīne scribe :

1. These things were reported to the Helvetians through informers.
 2. In accordance with their custom they compelled him to plead his case from chains. 3. (If) condemned it was necessary that the punishment follow. 4. They determined to burn Orgetorix to ashes.
 5. They gave a pledge to each other so that he would be burned to ashes. 6. They hoped to be able by their own troops and their own army. 7. He persuaded Casticus to burn (that he should burn) the cart to ashes with fire.

Latīne responde :

Quomodo ea res enuntiāta est ? Quibus ea res enuntiāta est ? Quomodo Orgetorigem causam dicere coegērunt ? Quam poenam (*what penalty*) sequi oportēbat ? In quo casu est *moribus ? vinculis ? causam ? igni ? res ?*

Inflect very rapidly the forms now learned, including the verb **amo**, in the active and passive voices. The class may profitably do this in concert in a very few minutes. Inflect rapidly the nouns in this lesson.

NOTES.

1. The phrase, *in accordance with*, is expressed in Latin by simply putting the noun in the abl. case ; e. g. **moribus suis**, *in accordance with their customs*. App. 24, i, N.

2. **Oportēbat**, *it was necessary*, is an impersonal verb, i. e. without a personal subject, and used only in the third sing. A. 145 ; H. 298 ; App. 18. **Damnātum . . . oportēbat** : *if condemned the punishment to follow (him, Orgetorix) was necessary (ought)*.

3. The participle **damnātum** is equivalent to a conditional clause, **si damnātus esset**. A. 292 ; H. 549, 2.

4. The clause **ut igni cremarētur** is a substantive clause, i. e. a clause used as a noun. Here it is in apposition with **poenam**. A. 329, 2 ; H. 501, III.

PENSUM VICESIMUM NONUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

speaking, pleading	dictio, ōnis (<i>dico, speak</i>)
judgment, decision, court, trial	judicium, -i
retinue, family servants	familia, -ae
ten	decem, <i>adj. indecl.</i>
follower, retainer	cliens, clientis, c.
dependent, debtor	obaerātus, -i, (<i>ob + aes, copper, money</i>)
in the same place, to the same place	eōdem, <i>adv.</i>
lest, that not	ne, <i>conj. c. subj.</i>
through, by means of	per, <i>praep. c. acc.</i>
break away, tear away	eripio, -ere, -ui, ereptus (<i>e + rapio, seize</i>)
lead together, bring together, hire	condūco, -ducere, -duxi, -ductus, (<i>cum + duco</i>)

Derivātiva Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam verte cum textu priōre :

Die constitūta causae dictiōnis Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam ad hominum milia decem undique coēgit, et omnes clientes obaeratosque suos, quorum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem conduxit : per eos ne causam diceret se eripuit.

Voce in Latīnum verte :

Day — on the day — on the day appointed — cause *or* case — of the case — of the pleading of the case — trial — to the trial — brought together to the trial — he brought together all his retinue — he brought together about ten thousands of men — Orgetorix brought — he led together — he led together all his retainers — all his retainers and debtors — who — of whom — he had — he had a number — he had a great number — I have a great number — he led together to the same place — through — through them — he tore himself away (*he escaped*) — lest (*that not*) — that he might not plead — that he might not plead his case — Orgetorix broke away — he hopes to break away.

Latīne scribe :

1. On the day appointed for the pleading (lit. of the pleading) of the case he brought to the same place all his retinue and two thousands of his debtors. 2. They determined to lead together from all sides about ten thousand debtors. 3. They had a great number of retainers. 4. Through them they broke away that they might not plead their case. 5. In accordance with their customs, they led together a great number of men. 6. He showed them that it was very easy to bring together a number of dependents.

Latīne responde :

Quo die Orgetorix ad iudicium suam familiam coēgit? Quos praeter (*besides*) eos ad iudicium erant? Quot homines in Orgetorigis familia erant? Cur (*why*) eos conduxit? Nonne Orgetorix se eripuit? Quo (*whither*) eos conduxit? In quo genere est nomen *dictio*? (XXII., 4) *iudicium*? *familia*? *obaerātus*? In quo numero est *hominum*? *eos*? *se*? Quae partes primariae sunt (*what are the principal parts*) verbi (*of the verb*) *eripuit*?

Review the verb **amo**, noting again the tense stems, tense signs, and personal endings. XIX., XXVII.

NOTES.

1. **Ad** with numerals is rendered *about*.
2. For number of **se**, *vid.* XXI., 4.
3. **Quo die** : *on what day* ; **die constitūta** : *on the appointed day*
Observe that **dies**, usually masc., is sometimes fem. in the sing.

PENSUM TRICESIMUM.**VOCABULARIUM.**

on account of, for
urge on, incite
arms
right, justice, law

ob, *praep. c. acc.*
incito (l)
arma, -**ōrum**, n.
jus, **juris**, n.

follow out, assert, execute	exsequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum (<i>note 2</i>)
magistracy, magistrate	magistrātus, -us
die	mori, mori, mortuus sum (<i>note 2</i>)
and not, nor	neque, conj. neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque
mistrust, suspicion	suspicio, -ōnis
nor is the suspicion wanting	neque abest suspicio
as	ut, adv. (cum modo indicativo); cf. ut, conj.
death	mors, mortis, f.
decree, appoint	conscisco, -ere, conscīvi, conscītus
to appoint death to one's self,	
to commit suicide	sibi mortem consciscere

Derivativa Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam verte cum textu priore :

Cum civitas ob eam rem incitāta armis jus suum exsequi conarētur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistrātus cogerent, Orgetorix mortuus est ; neque abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitrabantur, quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit.

Voce in Latīnam verte :

When — when the state — when the state was attempting — was attempting to assert — to assert its rights — to assert its rights by arms — the magistrates — the magistrates were collecting — were collecting a multitude of men — were collecting from the country — I die — to die — he died — she died — they died — Orgetorix died — is from (is wanting) — nor is the suspicion wanting — as they think — as the Helvetians think — he himself — death — to appoint death — to appoint death to one's self (to commit suicide) — Orgetorix committed suicide.

Latīne scribe :

1. When the states were attempting to assert their rights by arms, Orgetorix died. 2. The states were incited on account of this thing, and attempted to assert their rights. 3. Suspicions were not wanting that they committed suicide. 4. The magistrates, who at the time possessed the chief power in the state, were hoping to be able to assert their rights. 5. You can persuade the Helvetians to assert the right of the state.

Latīne responde :

Cur civitas armis jus suum exsequi conabātur? Qui multitudinem hominum ex agris cogēbant? Quis mortuus est? Quae erat suspicio? Quid Helvetii arbitrabantur? Quis sibi mortem conscivit? In quo tempore est *conātur*? *mortuus est*? *abest*? Nonne *conor* deponens verbum est? Certe, *conor* verbum deponens est.

NOTES.

1. **Cum** . . . **conarētur**, *when the state attempted*; the subjunctive is required because this is a clause of situation. A. 323, *ff.*, 325; H. 521, II., 2; App. 26, 5, *a.*

2. Deponent verbs, i. e. verbs having the form of the passive and the meaning of the active, have in the active the future infinitive, the participles, the gerund, and the supine. The perfect participle sometimes has a passive meaning.

3. **Quin** = *that*, after expressions of doubt. XXV., *Vocab.*

PENSUM TRICESIMUM PRIMUM.

Learn the inflection of the verb **moneo** of the second conjugation in the active and passive voices. A. 130; H. 207, 208; App. 12.

1. The stem vowel is **-ē**, instead of **-ā** as in the first conjugation. The endings are exactly the same as in **amo**.

2. In the perfect active of **moneo**, as in many verbs of the second conjugation, the stem vowel **ē** is dropped and **v** is changed to **u**; e. g. **monui** for **monēvi**. Originally **-ui** and **-vi** were the same termination.

3. The present subjunctive has a mood-vowel **-a** before the personal ending, and retains the stem vowel **e** before it.

4. The perfect passive participle has the stem vowel **e** weakened to **i**; thus **monitus** for **monētus**.

Verte in Latīnum :

I warn — I was warning — I will warn — I have warned — I had warned — I shall have warned — warned — I may warn — I might warn — I may have warned — I might have warned — do thou warn — let them be warned — to warn — to have warned — to be about to warn (*to intend to warn*) — warning — about to warn (*intending to warn*) — of warning — for warning — to warn (**supīnum**) — he is warned — they were being warned — we will be warned — thou hast been warned — they had been warned — I shall have been warned — he may be warned — we might be warned — they may have been warned — you might have been warned — to be warned — to have been warned — having been warned — to be warned (**gerundivus**) — I warn Casticus — I will warn the man — the Helvetians were warned.

Name the forms of the verbs of the first and second conjugations in the chapters studied.

PENSUM TRICESIMUM SECUNDUM.**VOCABULARIUM.**

after	post , <i>praep. c. acc.</i>
none, by no means	nihilo , <i>adv.</i>
less	minus , <i>adv.</i> (<i>pos. parve, sup. minime</i>)
where, when	ubi , <i>adv.</i>
already, now	jam , <i>adv.</i>
prepare, get ready	paro (1), <i>cf. comparo</i>
a fortified town, stronghold	oppidum , -i
twelve	duodecim , <i>adj. indecl.</i>
village	vicus , -i
four hundred	quadringenti , -ae, -a
private	privātus , -a, -um
building	aedificium , -i
set fire to, burn, rouse	incendo , -ere, incendi , incensus

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam verte cum textu priore :

Post ejus mortem nihilo minus Helvetii id quod constituerant, facere conantur, ut e finibus suis exeant. Ubi jam se ad eam rem parātos esse arbitrāti sunt, oppida sua omnia, numero ad duodecim, vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt.

Voce in Latīnum verte :

After his death — after their death — less — none the less — they determined — they had determined — that — that which — that which they had determined — they attempt — they attempt to do — they attempt to do that which they had determined (upon) — they attempt to go forth — to go forth from their boundaries — when — when they thought — they thought they were prepared — for this thing — for these things — they set fire to — they set fire to their towns — all their towns — twelve in number — about twelve in number — villages — they set fire to the villages — about four hundred villages — about one hundred and eighty villages — buildings — all the private buildings — they set fire to the remaining private buildings — there were many buildings.

Latīne scribe :

1. The Helvetians will attempt that which they have determined.
2. They were attempting to go forth from their boundaries. 3. When they think they are prepared for these things they burn to ashes all their private buildings. 4. The towns were about twelve in number, and the villages about two hundred and forty.

Latīne responde :

Quid Helvetii facere conāti sunt? Ubi oppida sua incendunt? Quot oppida Helvetii habēbant? Quot vicos Helvetii habēbant? Ubi Helvetii vivēbant (*live*)? Nonne Helvetii in Gallia vivēbant? In quo casu est *ejus*? *mortem*? *finibus*? *rem*? *oppida*? *numero*? *vicos*? quae pars oratiōnis est *ejus*? *nihilo*? *quod*? *sua*? In quo

modo est *conantur*? *parātos esse*? Cur est *parātos esse* in modo infinitivo? (Oratio obliqua, XIV. 1.)

Inflect all the forms of the verb **habeo**. XXXI.

Inflect the pronouns in this lesson, noting the forms that differ from the corresponding cases of adjectives.

PENSUM TRICESIMUM TERTIUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

grain	frumentum, -i
except, beyond, besides	praeterquam, <i>adv.</i>
with them	secum (<i>se + cum</i>), <i>cf.</i> quibuscum
carry, bring	* porto (1), <i>cf.</i> important
they intended to carry	portatūri erant
burn up, consume	combūro, -ere, -ussi, -ustus, <i>cf.</i> cremo, incendo
house, home	domus -us, f. (<i>abl.</i> domo)
a return, a going back	reditio, -ōnis (<i>re + eo, go</i>)
hope	spes, spei
lift up, take away	tollo, -ere, sustuli, sublātus
prepared, ready	parātus, -a, -um (<i>comp.</i> paratior, -is)
trial, danger	periculum, -i
undergo, endure	subeo, -īre, -īvi, -itus (<i>sub + eo</i>)
for enduring	ad . . . subeunda (<i>note 5</i>)
so that . . . they would be	ut . . . essent

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam verte cum textu priōre :

Frumentum omne, praeterquam quod secum portatūri erant, combūrant, ut domum reditiōnis spe sublāta paratiōres ad omnia pericula subeunda essent.

Voce in Latīnum verte :

Grain — all the grain — they burn up the grain — except — except that which (**quod**) — they intended to carry — except that which they

intended to carry with them — taken away — the hope taken away — the hope of a return taken away — the hope of a returning — of returning home — so that, that — so that they would be — prepared — better prepared — so that they would be better prepared — better prepared for enduring — for enduring all dangers — they were better prepared — the Helvetians were prepared — I am prepared — not prepared — always (**semper**) prepared.

Latīne scribe :

1. They will carry all the grain with them. 2. He intended to carry all the grain with him. 3. They carried with them the carts, grain, and draught animals, so that they would be better prepared. 4. The Helvetians thought they were prepared for enduring all dangers. 5. They burn up the towns, villages, and private buildings, and inhabit another part of Gaul.

Latīne responde :

Quantum frumenti (*how much grain*) combūrunt? Cur frumentum omne combūrunt? Qui paratiōres erant? Nonne spes sublāta est? Quorum (*whose*) spes sublāta est? Orgetorixne ante ea (*before these things*) mortuus est? Certe, Orgetorix ante ea mortuus est. Quo genere (*of what gender*) est domus? spes? reditio?

Inflect in full the verb **porto**. XIX.

NOTES.

1. **Portatūri erant**, *they intended to carry*. Explain the formation and use of the active periphrastic conjugation. XXV. 1.

2. **Domus** has its abl. sing., and sometimes its dat. sing., in the second declension, and has a locative form, **domi**, *at home*. A. 70, *f*; H. 119, 1; App. 4.

3. **Spe sublāta**: construction? XIII. 2; XXVI. 2. May here be rendered by a temporal clause.

4. **Paratiōres**: *more prepared*, or *better prepared*. How is the comparative formed? XI. 1. Give its inflection.

5. **Ad subeunda:** *for undergoing*; more literally, *for . . . to be undergone or endured*. How is the gerundive formed and inflected? XXI. 1, 2.

6. **Ut . . . essent.** The subjunctive, because this is a purpose clause. A. 317; H. 497, I. II.; App. 26, II. 1.

PENSUM TRICESIMUM QUARTUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

three	tres, tria (<i>gen. trium, dat. tribus</i>)
month	mensis, -is, m.
grind	molo, -ere, molui, molitus
provisions, rations	cibaria, -ōrum
ground grain	molita cibaria
each one, each	quisque, quaeque, quidque (<i>gen. cujusque</i>)
bring out, carry away	effero, efferre, extuli, elātus (<i>ex + fero</i>)
order, command	jubeo, -ēre, jussi, jussus (<i>cf. jus</i>)
set out, depart	proficiscor, -i, profectus sum
use, employ, enjoy	utor, uti, usus sum
counsel, plan	consilium, -i
having used the same plan	eōdem usu consilio
burn up	exūro, -urere, -ussi, -ustus (<i>cf. combūro</i>)
in company, together	una, <i>adv.</i>

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam verte cum textū priōre :

Trium mensium molita cibaria sibi quemque domo efferre jubent. Persuādent Rauracis et Tulingis et Latobrigis finitimis uti, eōdem usu consilio, oppidis suis vicisque exustis, una cum eis proficiscantur.

Voce in Latīnum verte :

Three — three months — of three months — provisions (grain) — ground grain — ground grain for three months — they order — they

order each one — they order each one to bring from home — to bring for himself — to bring from home ground grain — they persuade — they persuade their neighbors — they persuade their neighbors to set out — they persuade the Rauraci and the Tulingi, their neighbors — to set out together with them — I set out — I have set out — I set out together with them — I use — having used — having used the same plan — having burned their towns (their towns having been burned) — having burned their villages.

Latīne scribe :

1. They ordered all to bring from home ground grain for a month.
2. He persuades the Rauraci, the Tulingi, the Latobrigi, and the rest of the neighbors to set out together with him.
3. The Rauraci used the same plan.
4. When they had burned up their own towns.
5. Their neighbors were better prepared for undergoing danger.

Latīne responde :

Quot mensium molita cibaria sibi quemque domo efferre jubent? Quibus populis Helvetii persuādent? Qui erant Rauraci et Tulingi et Latobrigi? Nomen finitimi erant Helvetiis? Quo consilio (*what plan*) usi sunt? Quorum oppida exussērunt? Quo casu est *mensium? cibaria? domo? Rauracis? consilio? vicis? eōdem?* Qua constructione est *oppidis suis vicisque exustis?* (Ablatīvus absolūtus.)

Inflect rapidly the verb **jubeo**, observing the tenses formed from the perfect stem, and those formed from the perfect participle stem. Inflect the universal pronoun **quisque**. A. 105, *e*; H. 190; App. 11, *g*.

NOTES.

1. **Rauracis**: construction? XIV. 3.

2. **Uti**, from a still older form **utei**, is another form for **ut**. It can be distinguished from **uti**, to use, by the quantity of the first vowel, and the connection. **Uti . . . proficiscantur**: *to set out, to depart*. Cf. **ut . . . essent**. XXXIII. 6.

3. **Utor** has its object in the abl. What other verb takes the abl.?
 XIV. 4.
 4. **Oppidis . . . exustis** : for construction and rendering, XXVI.
 2. Cf. **spe sublāta**, XXXIII. 3.

PENSUM TRICESIMUM QUINTUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

live, dwell, inhabit	incolo , -ere, -ui, -cultus
of the Norici, Norican	Noricus , -a, -um
attack, storm	oppugno (1)
receive	recipio , -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus (re + capio)
ally	socius , -i
approve, admit, receive, adopt	adscisco , -ere, -scīvi, -scītus

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam verte cum textu priōre :

Boiosque, qui trans Rhenum incoluerant et in agrum Noricum transierant Noreiamque oppugnārant, receptos ad se socios sibi adsciscunt.

Voce in Latīnum verte :

They admit — they admit the Boii — they admit the Boii to themselves — they admit them to themselves as allies — who — who had dwelt — had dwelt across the Rhine — the Boii had dwelt across the Rhine — into — into the territory — into the Norican territory — had crossed into the Norican territory — received — received to themselves — the Boii dwell across the Rhine — they inhabit a third part of Gaul — they persuade the Boii — they burn up the towns — the towns and villages — the Boii were prepared — they were better prepared — we are prepared.

Latīne scribe :

1. They admit to themselves as allies the Boii, who had dwelt across the river. 2. They persuade the Boii, who have crossed into the territory of the Rauraci. 3. The Helvetians intended to storm (XXV. 1) Noreia. 4. The Helvetians think that the Boii stormed Noreia. 5. When the Helvetians were attempting to storm the town they ordered the men to go forth. 6. When they had burned their own towns and villages they thought they were better prepared for enduring every danger.

Latīne responde :

Ubi Boii incoluerant? In quem agrum transierant? Ad quos Boii recepti sunt? Quod oppidum Boii oppugnaverant? Qui Boios socios sibi adsciscunt? In quo tempore est *incoluerant*? (Plusquamperfecto.) In quo tempore est *transierant*? *oppugnārant*? Quid est temporis signum (*the tense sign*)?

Inflect rapidly the verb **oppugno**, or the simple form **pugno**.

Review rapidly the other grammatical forms.

NOTES.

1. **Transierant** and **oppugnārant** are contracted from **transi-verant** and **oppugnaverant**. In the contraction of tenses formed from the perfect stem the **v** is dropped, and the vowel following it unites with the preceding vowel. A. 10, *b*; H. 23.

2. **Receptos** agrees with **Boios**. The participle is here equivalent to a co-ordinate clause. A. 292, Rem.; H. 549, 5. Render: *they received to themselves and adopted (sibi adsciscunt) as allies the Boii, etc.*

PENSUM TRICESIMUM SEXTUM.

Learn the inflection of the model verb of the third conjugation (A. 131; H. 209, 210; App. 12), observing carefully the variations from the first and second conjugations, as follows :

1. In the present indicative the stem vowel *ĕ* (*e brevis*) is weakened to *i* and in the third plural to *u*. The future tense has no tense sign, and in the first person singular the stem vowel *e* is changed to *a*.

2. The perfect stem must generally be learned by observation, although many verbs of this conjugation form the perfect by adding *-s* to the root. Thus *reg + si*, whence *rexī*.

3. The present subj. has the mood sign *a* and no stem vowel.

4. In the imperative, the stem vowel *ĕ* before a personal ending is weakened to *i*, except in the third plural, where it is changed to *u*.

5. In the perfect participle the stem vowel *ĕ* is dropped, and *g* of the stem is changed to *c* before *t*. Thus, *rectus* for *reg + tus*.

6. The present infinitive in the passive voice has the ending *-i* with no stem vowel. In other respects the tense signs and personal endings are exactly the same as in the first and second conjugations.

Review the preceding chapters, naming the verb forms.

PENSUM TRICESIMUM SEPTIMUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

altogether, in all	<i>omnīno, adv. (omnis)</i>
two	<i>duo, -ae, -o (gen. duum, vel duōrum)</i>
narrow	<i>angustus, -a, -um (ango, squeeze)</i>
difficult	<i>difficilis, -e</i>
scarcely, with difficulty	<i>vix, adv.</i>
where	<i>qua, adv.</i>
one by one, one at a time	<i>singuli, -ae, -a</i>
impend, overhang	<i>impendeo, -ēre (other parts wanting)</i>
very few	<i>perpauci, -ae, -a</i>
much, by far	<i>multo, adv. (cf. multus)</i>
unimpeded, quick	<i>expeditus, -a, -um (comp. -ior, -ius)</i>
recently	<i>nuper, adv.</i>
pacify, subdue	<i>paco (1) (pax, peace)</i>

flow	<i>fluo, fluere, fluxi, fluxus</i>
not none, some, several	<i>nonnullus, -a, -um (non + nullus)</i>
a shallow place, ford	<i>vadum, -i (vado, wade)</i>

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.**In linguam Anglicam verte :**

Erant omnīno itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exīre pos-
sent : unum per Sequanos angustum et difficile, inter montem
Juram et flumen Rhodanum, vix qua singuli carri ducerentur ;
mons autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpauci prohibēre
possent ; alterum per provinciam nostram, multo facilius atque
expeditius, propterea quod inter fines Helvetiōrum et Allo-
brogum, qui nuper pacāti erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nonnullis
locis vado transitur.

Voce in Latīnum verte :

There were — there were two roads — were in all two roads — by
which — by which they could go forth — one road — on the road —
a narrow and difficult road — between — between the mountain and
the river — where — with difficulty — where carts one by one —
where carts could be drawn — quickly — quicker — much quicker —
because — who — who had been subdued — who recently had been
subdued — the Rhone — the Rhone flows — the Rhone is crossed —
is crossed in places — in several places — is crossed by a ford — the
river is crossed by a ford.

Latīne scribe :

1. There was one road by which he could go from home.
2. The road was narrow and difficult between the mountain and the river.
3. High mountains were overhanging the river.
4. The other road was easy and unimpeded.
5. The Allobroges were recently subdued.
6. The river is crossed in one place by a ford.

Latīne responde :

Quot itinera erant ? Ubi unum iter erat ? Ubi alterum iter erat ?
Qui populi nuper pacāti erant ? Quomodo Rhodanus transitur ?

In qua conjugatione est *paco*? (Prima.) *Impendo*? (Secunda.) *Flo*? (Tertia.) Quae orationis pars est *omnino*? *omnis*? *difficilis*? *difficultas*? *paco*? *pax*? *vadum*? *vado*?

Inflect together **mons altissimus**, **provinciam nostram**, quibus **itineribus**, and **nonnullis locis**, beginning with the nominative forms.

NOTES.

1. **Duo** : for peculiarities in inflection, *vid.* A. 94, *b* ; H. 175 ; App. 10, *g*.

2. Numeral adjectives like **singuli**, meaning *how many apiece*, or, *how many each*, are called distributives. They are inflected like the plural of **magnus**, with the gen. plu. sometimes ending in **-um**. A. 95 ; H. 172, 3 ; App. 10, *a*.

3. **Facilius**, **expeditius** : for formation and inflection, *vid.* XI. 1. How here distinguished from the comp. of the adv.?

PENSUM TRICESIMUM OCTAVUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

last, extreme, farthest	extrēmus , -a, -um (<i>pos. exterus, comp. exterior</i>)
Geneva	Genua , -ae
bridge	pons , pontis , m.
from, out of	<i>ex, vel ex, praep. c. abl.</i>
not yet	nondum (non + dum) <i>adv.</i>
endure, suffer, permit, allow	patior , pati , passus sum
good	bonus , -a, -um (<i>comp. melior, sup. optimus</i>)
in good mind, kindly disposed	bono animo
see (<i>in passive</i> , seem, appear)	video , vidēre , vidi , visus
estimate, think, consider	existimo (1) (ex + aestimo , <i>compute</i>)
or, even	vel , <i>conj.</i>
either . . . or	vel . . . vel (<i>cf. aut . . . aut</i>)

force, violence	vis, vis , f. (<i>abl. vi, plu. vires, strength</i>)
come together, assemble	convenio, -īre, -vēni, -ventus
before	ante , <i>adv., aut præp. c. acc.</i>
fifth	quintus, -a, -um (<i>quinque</i>)
the Calends, the first day of the	
month	Kalendæ, -arum
April, of April	Aprīlis, -is , m., <i>aut Aprīlis, -e</i> (<i>aperio, open</i>)
the fifth day before the Calends	a. d. v. Kal. Apr. <i>aut ante diem quin-</i>
of April	<i>tum Kalendas Aprīles</i>
Aulus	Aulus, -i , <i>vel A.</i>
Lucius	Lucius, -i , <i>vel L.</i>

Derivativa Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam verte cum textu priore :

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helveti-
 ōrum finibus Genua. Ex eo oppido pons ad Helvetios pertinet.
 Allobrogibus sese vel persuasūros, quod nondum bono animo
 in populum Romānum viderentur, existimābant, vel vi coactūros,
 ut per suos fines eos ire paterentur. Omnibus rebus ad profec-
 tiōnem comparātis, diem dicunt qua die ad ripam Rhodani
 omnes conveniant. Is dies erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pisōne
 A. Gabinio consulibus.

Voce in Latīnum verte :

The last town — the next town — next to the boundaries — to the
 Helvetians' boundaries — from that town — from these towns — he
 persuades — he persuaded — they would persuade — they thought
 they would persuade — would persuade the Allobroges — they thought
 they would compel — would compel by force — either would persuade
 or compel by force — so that — so that they would permit — would
 permit them to go — would permit him to go — when all things were
 prepared — day — they appointed a day — on which day (when) —
 when all should assemble — should assemble at the banks — in the
 consulship of Lucius Piso and Aulus Gabinius — a consul — the
 consuls — two consuls.

Latīne scribe :

1. The towns were nearest the boundaries of the Allobroges. 2. Bridges were extended from these towns across the river. 3. The Helvetians thought they would persuade the Allobroges. 4. They thought they would compel them by force. 5. They thought they would compel them to permit (**ut . . . paterentur**) them to go. 6. They thought so (**ita**) because they seemed kindly disposed to them. 7. When everything was prepared, they appointed a day. 8. These days were before the first of April. 9. These days were in the consulship of Marcus Piso and Aulus Gabinius.

Latīne responde :

Quod oppidum proximum Helvetiōrum finibus est? Pons ad quem populum pertinet? Quibus sese persuasūros existimābant? Quos (*whom*) vi coactūros existimābant? Erantne (*were they*) bono animo in populum Romānum? Ad ripam cujus fluminis omnes conveniēbant? Conveueruntne? Ignōro. Quī consules erant? In quo casu est *finibus*? *Genua*? *pons*? *Allobrogibus*? *animo*? *vi*? *fines*? *rebus*? *die*? *dies*?

NOTES.

1. **Allobrogibus** : constr.? H. XIV., 3.

2. **Vel**, or (**volo**, *I wish*), is used where choice between two alternatives is a matter of indifference; **aut**, or, is used where one alternative excludes the other. Cf. **duum vel duōrum** (XXXVII., Vocab.); with **ante**, *adv.*, *aut praep.* (XXXVIII., Vocab.).

3. **Persuasūros** : *supply esse*. Cf. XXV. 1. *Why inf?* XIV. 1.

4. **Bono animo** : the abl. is used with an adj. (or a genitive) to describe or characterize a person or thing. This is called the Ablative of Quality or Characteristic (**Ablatīvus Qualitātis**). A. 251; H. 419, II.; App. 24, *l*.

5. **Quod . . . viderentur** : **quod**, *because*, takes the subjunctive whenever it denotes a reason given doubtfully or on another's authority. Otherwise it takes the indicative. A. 321; H. 516, I. II.; App. 26, II. 3.

6. For infl. of **vis**, *vid.* A. 61; H. 66; App. 3, *e*.

7. **Omnibus rebus comparātis ; L. Pisōne . . . consulibus :** for rendering of abl. abs. cf. XXVI. 2.

8. **A. d. v. Kal. Apr. :** from the Calends time was reckoned backwards, and both extremes included. Thus, the fifth day before the Calends of April includes both the first of April and the twenty-eighth of March. A. 376 ; H. 642. Here the logical construction would read "**erat dies quintus ante Kalendas Apriles,**" where **ante** is a prep. governing **Kalendas** in the acc., and **Apriles** is an adj. agreeing with **Kalendas** (*the fifth day before the April Calends*) ; but **ante diem quintum**, etc., grew to be a fixed form of expression which must be treated as an indeclinable noun, before which **in** or **ex** may stand ; e. g. **in a. d. v. Kal. Apr.**, where all that follows **in** is to be taken as an indeclinable noun governed by **in**, whereas the logical expression would be **in die quinto ante**, etc.

PENSUM TRICESIMUM NONUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

Caesar	Caesar, Caesaris
report, announce	nuntio (1)
hasten	matūro (1)
city	urbs, urbis, f. (cf. oppidum)
contend, hasten, push forward	contendo, -ere, -tendi, -tentus
come through, arrive	pervenio, -īre, -vēni, -ventus (per+venio)
soldier	miles, militis, m.
command, demand from, levy upon	impero (1)
farther, more remote	ulterior, -ius (<i>gen. ulteriōris</i>), <i>no positive form</i>
a chosen number, legion	legio, -ōnis (lego, <i>choose</i>)
cut down, break down	rescindo, -ere, -scidi, -scissus

Derivativa Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam verte :

Caesari cum id nuntiātum esset, eos per provinciam nostram iter facere conāri, matūrat ab urbe proficisci et, quam maximis potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genuam pervenit. Provinciae toti quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat (erat omnīno in Gallia ulteriōre legio una) pontem, qui erat ad Genuam, jubet rescindi.

Verte in Latīnum :

This thing — when — when this had been reported — to attempt — to attempt to march — to march through our province — he hastens to depart — to depart from the city — a journey (a march) — marches — by marches — by very great marches — by as great marches as possible — farther Gaul — into farther Gaul — he pushes on into farther Gaul — he levies — he levies upon the whole province — a number — as great a number as possible — as great a number of soldiers as possible — a legion — there was one legion — there were two legions — he orders — he orders the bridge to be broken down — the bridge was at Geneva — the bridges were at Geneva.

Latīne scribe :

1. When these things had been reported to Caesar. 2. When they had reported that they were attempting to march through our province. 3. They hasten to depart from the city. 4. They hasten into Gaul by forced marches (**quam maximis potest itineribus**). 5. They arrived at Geneva. 6. There were in all three legions in that town. 7. He levied two legions upon the province. 8. They will order the bridges to be broken down.

Latīne responde :

Cui id nuntiātum est? Nonne id Caesari nuntiātum est? Quid Caesari nuntiātum est? Quae Caesar fecit? Caesar ab qua urbe proficisci matūrat? (Caesar ab urbe Roma proficisci matūrat.) Quo (*whither*) Caesar contendit? Quot milites Caesar imperāvit? Quot legiōnes in ulteriōre Gallia erant? Qui nondum bono animo in

populum Romānum videbantur? Quo genere est *legio*? (XXII. 1.)
Numerum? *miles*? (N. 4.) Cur est *conāri* in modo infinitivo?
 (XIV. 1.) Quot homines in legiōne erant? (N. 5.)

Inflect in full the verb **contendo**.

NOTES.

1. For case of **eos** and mode of **conāri**, *vid.* XIV. 1. By what case and mode should they be rendered into English?

2. **Quam . . . itineribus**: Cf. XX. 1.

3. **Provinciae**: why in the dat.? XIV. 3.

4. Nouns like **miles** with the nom. ending in **-es**, gen. **-itis** or **-idis** (**-ēdis**) are of the masc. gender.

5. A full legion consisted of 6,000 men. The legion was subdivided into ten *cohortes*, each cohort into three *manipuli*, each manipule into two *centuriae*. A legion was not always full, however, and might contain only 3,000 men.

PENSUM QUADRAGESIMUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

coming, arrival	adventus, -us
decided, certain, sure	certus, -a, -um (<i>cerno</i>)
to make more certain, to inform	certiōrem facere
they were informed	certiōres facti sunt
one chosen, legate, ambassador	legātus, -i (<i>lego</i>), <i>cf.</i> <i>legio et legatio</i>
send	mitto, mittere, misi, missus
chief, principal	princeps, principis, adj. aut nomen (<i>primus + capio</i>)
to say that it was their intention	qui dicerent sibi esse in animo
without	sine, praep. c. abl.
any	ullus, -a, -um (<i>gen. ullius, dat. ulli</i>)
doing evil, mischief, outrage	maleficium, -i (<i>male + facio</i>)
another, other	alius, -a, -ud (<i>gen. alius, dat. alii</i>)

no one, none	nullus, -a, -um (<i>gen. nullius, dat. nulli</i>)
willingness, will, consent	voluntas, -tātis (<i>volo</i>)
it is allowed, it is permitted	licet, licēre, licuit (<i>impers.</i>)
to ask permission	rogāre ut liceat

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam verte cum textu priōre :

Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiōres facti sunt, legātos ad eum mittunt, nobilissimos civitātis, cujus legatiōnis Nammeius et Verudoctius principem locum obtinēbant, qui dicerent, sibi esse in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nullum : rogāre, ut ejus voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.

Voce in Latīnum verte :

When — when the Helvetians were informed — when I was informed — concerning his arrival — concerning their arrival — they send — they send ambassadors — they sent an ambassador — of the state — the most noted of the state — of which embassy (and of this embassy) — a place — the chief place — they were holding the chief place — who — who should say (to say) — it was their intention — mischief — without mischief — a journey — to make a journey — to march — to march through the province — to ask — to ask permission — to ask his consent.

Latīne scribe :

1. When Caesar was informed concerning their arrival, he sent an ambassador. 2. They sent ambassadors to say (*qui dicerent*) it was their intention to march through Gaul. 3. In this embassy, Nammeius and Verudoctius held the chief place. 4. They sent them to ask permission to go through the province. 5. They inform Caesar that they intend to march through the province.

Latīne responde :

De cujus adventu Helvetii certiōres facti sunt? Quos ad eum mittunt? Qui principem locum obtinēbant? Cur iter per pro-

vinciam facere volēbant? In quo casu est verbum *ejus?* *adventu?* *legātos?* *legatiōnis?* *locum?* *sibi?* *animo?* *iter?* *voluntāte?* In quo gradu comparatiōnis (*degree of comparison*) est adjectivum *certiōres?* (Comparativo.) *Nobilissimos?*

Inflect the verb **mitto**, observing the stems and tense signs. Inflect together **cujus legatiōnis**, **principem locum**, **aliud iter**, and **ejus voluntātis**, beginning with the nom. forms.

Inflect **certus** in the comp. degree. XI. 1.

NOTES.

1. **Qui dicerent** = **ut ei dicerent**, *who should say, that they should say, to say*. Whenever a relative introducing a clause is equivalent, as here, to **ut** with a demonstrative denoting purpose, the subjunctive is used just as if **ut** stood at the beginning of the clause. A. 317, 2; H. 497, I.; App. 26. II. 1, b.

2. Observe in the idiomatic phrase **certiōrem facere**, *to inform*, that **certior** is comp. of the adj. **certus**, and like any adj. agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.

3. **Esse**: why inf.? How translated? XIV. 1.

4. **Liceat**: impersonal. Cf. **oportēbat**, XXVIII. 2.

PENSUM QUADRAGESIMUM UNUM.

Learn the inflection of **audio** (A. 132; H. 211-12; App. 12), the model verb of the fourth conjugation, noting carefully the following differences from the other conjugations:

1. The stem vowel is **i**. In the third plural of the present indicative and the future imperative **u** is inserted before the ending: thus, **audiunt**, not **audint**. The imperfect ind. inserts **ē** before the tense sign; thus **audiēbam**, not **audibam**. The future tense is formed as in the third conjugation, but retains the stem vowel **i**. The same is true of the present subj.

2. The present act. part. and the gerund and gerundive insert *-e* after the stem vowel, thus: **audiendi**, not **audindi**. The student will observe that in other respects this verb is exactly like the first conjugation.

3. A few verbs of the third conjugation, like **facio** and **capio**, have the forms of the fourth conj. in all the tenses formed from the present stem, except the imperfect subj., the present imp., and infinitive.

In the third conj. verbs in **io**, **i** disappears whenever it would stand before **i** or short **e**; e. g. **cap-ere**, **cap-erem**, **capimus**; but the stem vowel **i** of the fourth conj. holds its place and the short **e** or **i** gives way; **audī-rem**. See the verb **capio**. A. 131; H. 218; App. 12.¹

Review the preceding chapters, naming and translating the various verb forms.

PENSUM QUADRAGESIMUM SECUNDUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

memory	memoria , -ae
retain, hold	teneo , -ēre, tenui , tentus
kill, slay	occīdo , -ere, -cīdi, -cīsus (ob + caedo , <i>cut</i>)
drive, rout, beat	pello , -ere, pepuli , pulsus
under	sub , <i>praep. c. acc. aut abl.</i>
yoke	jugum , -i (jungo , <i>join</i>)
concede, yield, grant, allow	concēdo , -ere, -cessi, -cessus (cum + cedo)
think, decide	puto (1) (<i>cf. existimo</i>)
unfriendly, hostile	inimīcus , -a, -um (<i>in neg. + amīcus</i>)
ability, means, opportunity	facultas , -tātis
refrain, forbear	tempero (1)
injustice, wrong, violence	injuria , -ae (<i>in neg. + jus, right</i>)

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam verte cum textu priore :

Caesar, quod memoria tenēbat, L. Cassium consulem occīsum exercitumque ejus ab Helvetiis pulsum et sub jugum missum,

concedendum non pŭtābat; neque homines inimīco animo, data facultāte per provinciam itineris faciundi, temperatūros ab injuria et maleficio existimābat.

Voce in Latīnum redde :

Caesar remembered (was holding in memory) — he remembered Lucius Cassius the consul — he remembered that the consul was slain — he remembered that the army was sent — sent under the yoke — he thought — he did not think — he did not think it ought to be granted — a man — men — men of mind — of hostile mind — opportunity — given the opportunity — when an opportunity was given — a journey — of making a journey — of making a journey through the province — he considered — nor did he consider — nor did he consider that they would refrain — would refrain from wrong — from mischief — he thought that the men would refrain — I think that I will refrain (**me temperatūrum**) from mischief.

Latīne scribe :

1. Caesar remembered that the consuls were slain and their armies beaten. 2. Their armies were sent under the yoke by the Helvetians. 3. The men thought it ought not to be granted. 4. They did not think that the men would refrain from mischief. 5. When an opportunity was given (**data facultāte**) of making a journey. 6. I think that the boys (**pueros**) will refrain from mischief.

Latīne responde :

Quid Caesar memoria tenēbat? Qui consul occīsus est? Cujus exercitus sub jugum missus est? Quid Caesar putābat? Quid Caesar existimābat? Quae forma est *occīsum? missum? concedendum? faciundi? temperatūros?*

NOTES.

1. After **occīsum**, **pulsum**, and **missum** supply **esse**, thus forming the perfect pass. inf. Why inf., and by what English mode translated? XIV. 1.

2. **Ab Helvetiis** (*by the Helvetians*): the ablative of agent (**abla-**

tīvus agentis) requires the prep. **a** or **ab**. A. 246; H. 415, 2; App. 24, *b*.

3. **Pulsum**: a few Latin verbs, following the analogy of the Greek, form the perfect active by repeating the first consonant, followed by a vowel. This is called *reduplication*; e. g. **pello**, **pe-puli**; **do**, **de-di**.

4. **Concedendum**: supply **esse**. The gerundive with some form of the verb **sum**, expressed or understood, is used in Latin to express necessity or obligation. This is generally rendered by the use of the auxiliaries *must* or *ought*. Thus **concedendum non putābat**, *he did not think it was to be, or ought to be, granted*. This forms what is called the second, or passive, periphrastic conjugation. A. 113, *d*, N., 129; H. 234; App. 14.

5. **Inimīco animo**: cf. **bono animo**, XXXVIII., Vocab., and note 4.

6. **Temperatūros**: supply **esse**. Cf. XXV., I.

PENSUM QUADRAGESIMUM TERTIUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

yet, nevertheless	tamen , <i>adv.</i>
space, period of time	spatium , <i>i</i>
go between, intervene	intercēdo , -cedere , -cēdi , -cessus (inter + cedo)
while, until	dum , <i>conj.</i>
answer, reply	respondeo , -ēre , -spondi , -sponsus
deliberate, consider	delibero (1)
take, employ	sumo , -ere , sumpsi , sumptus (sub + emo)
if	si , <i>conj.</i>
any one, anything	quis , quae , quid , <i>indef. pron.</i>
wish	volo , velle , volui
Ides	idus , iduum , <i>f. pl.</i>
return	revertor , -verti , -versus sum (re + verto)

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam verte cum textu priore :

Tamen, ut spatium intercedere posset, dum milites, quos imperaverat, convenirent, legatis respondit, diem se ad deliberandum sumpturum ; si quid vellent, ad Idus Apriles reverterentur.

Voce in Latīnum verte :

That (so that) — that a period of time might intervene — reply — he replied to the ambassadors — he replied that he would take — would take a day — a day for deliberating — while — while they should assemble — until the soldiers should assemble — the soldiers whom he had levied — if — if anything — if they wished anything — I return — he should return — they should return — about the thirteenth of April (**ad Idus Apriles**).

Latīne scribe :

1. A great period of time can (**potest**) intervene. 2. The soldiers whom he had levied assembled. 3. They were replying that they would take three days for deliberating. 4. If he had wished anything, he would have returned. 5. He came about the thirteenth of April.

Learn the inflection of the verb **possum**. A. 137, *b* ; H. 290, II. ; App. 15. Observe that it is formed of the syllable **pot-** of the adjective **potis** (*powerful*) and the verb **sum**. When the form of **sum** begins with a consonant, the **-t** is changed to **-s**. Thus, **possum**, not **potsum**.

NOTES.

1. **Ut . . . posset** : What is this subj. called, and what is its use? XXXIII. 6.

2. **Dum . . . convenirent** (*until they should assemble, i. e. desiring that they should, etc.*) : temporal clauses with **dum** take the subjunctive when the action is viewed as a thing desired or purposed. Otherwise they take the indicative.

3. **Ad deliberandum** : *for deliberating*. Observe that the gerund is a verbal noun denoting action, equivalent to the English noun ending in **-ing**. It is formed by adding **-nd** to the present stem,

with the endings of a neuter noun of the second declension; that it has no nom. and is used only in the sing. How does it differ from the gerundive? XXI. 1. Cf. *faciundi*, XLI.

4. **Sumptūrum** (*esse*): use? XXV. 1. Why inf.? XIV. 1.

5. **Vellent**: subj., because a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. A. 336, 2; H. 524; App. 27, c.

6. **Reverterentur**: subjunctive because representing an imperative used by Caesar in the direct discourse. Caesar's original words were probably, "**Si quid vultis, ad Idus Apriles revertimini.**" App. 27, c.

7. **Si quid**: *if anything*. **Quis**, interrogative, and **quis**, indefinite, have exactly the same forms. When indefinite, the form of **quis** is generally preceded by **si**, **nisi**, **num**, or **ne**. For inflection, *vid.* A. 104; H. 190; App. 11, g.

8. The Ides were the 13th of each month, excepting March, May, July and October, when they were on the 15th. When were the Calends? XXXVIII. 8.

PENSUM QUADRAGESIMUM QUARTUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

meanwhile	<i>interea, adv.</i>
flow, flow into	<i>influo, -ere, -fluxi, -fluxus</i>
ten and nine, nineteen	<i>decem novem, adj. indecl.</i>
wall	<i>murus, -i</i>
height, depth	<i>altitūdo, -tudinis (altus)</i>
foot	<i>pes, pedis</i>
sixteen	<i>sedecim (sex + decem)</i>
trench, ditch	<i>fossa, -ae</i>
lead through, construct	<i>perdūco, -ere, -duxi, -ductus (per + duco)</i>
work, labor, fortification	<i>opus, operis, n.</i>
make through, complete	<i>perficio, -ere, -fēci, -fectus (per + facio)</i>
guard, garrison	<i>praesidium, -i</i>
fort, redoubt	<i>castellum, -i</i>

place apart, dispose, arrange, station	dispōno, -ere, -posui, positus (dis + pono, place)
fortify, strongly intrench	communio, -īre, -īvi, vel -ii, -ītus (cum + munio, fortify)
unwilling	invītus, -a, -um
against his will	se invīto

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam verte cum textu priōre :

Interea ea legiōne, quam secum habēbat, militibusque, qui e provincia convenerant a lacu Lemanno, qui in flumen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Juram, qui fines Sequanōrum ab Helvetiis dividit, milia passuum decem novem murum in altitudinem pedum sedecim fossamque perdūcit. Eo opere perfecto praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quo facilius, si se invīto transire conarentur, prohibēre possit.

Voce in Latīnum verte :

A legion — with this legion — the legion which he had — he had with him — with the soldiers — with a soldier — who — who had assembled — who assembled — he constructs — he constructs a ditch — he constructs a wall — a wall sixteen feet in height — a trench nineteen miles in length — from the lake — to the river — he constructs a wall from the lake to the river — work — when the work was finished (**eo opere perfecto**) — he stations — he stations garrisons — they station a garrison — a redoubt — he fortifies redoubts — by which — by which he can prohibit — if they attempt — against his will — against my will (**me invīto**) — against the Helvetians' will — against your will (**te invīto**, or **vobis invītis**).

Latīne scribe :

1. With one legion and with many soldiers whom he had with him, he constructed a wall sixteen miles long. 2. They will construct a wall from Mount Jura to Lake Geneva. 3. Lake Geneva flows into the river Rhone. 4. The trench was sixteen feet deep.

5. When this work was completed they stationed the garrison in the fort. 6. He could check (**prohibēre poterat**) them if they attempted to cross against his will.

Latīne responde :

Quot legiōnes secum habēbat? Quot milites secum habēbat? (Ignōro.) Ad quem montem murum perdūcit? Quorum fines mons Jura dividit? In quo casu est *quam? fines? passuum? pedum? opere? castella?* In qua constructiōne est *eo opere perfecto?* (Ablativus absolūtus.) In qua constructiōne est *se invīto?*

Verbum habeo declīna.

NOTES.

1. **Decem novem**, *nineteen* : usually **undeviginti**, *one from twenty*. A. 94; H. 174.

2. **Altitūdo** : formation? gender? XVII. 2. **Pes** : gender? XXXIX. 4.

3. Third decl. nouns, like **opus**, **tempus**, whose stems end in **er** or **or**, and whose nom. ends in **us**, are neuter.

4. **Quo . . . possit** : what subj.? XL. 1. Cf. **ut . . . essent**, XXXIII. 6. App. 26, II. 1, *b, c*.

5. **Se invīto** : *he unwilling*, or *against his will*. Observe that the abl. abs. is here used with a substantive and an adj. Cf. XXVI. 2.

PENSUM QUADRAGESIMUM QUINTUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

to say no, deny	nego (1)
example	exemplum, -i
show, declare	ostendo, -ere, ostendi, ostensus <i>vel</i> ostentus (ob + tendo)
throw down, cast down, disappoint	dejicio, ere, jēci, jectus (de + jacio)
ship, vessel	navis, -is
raft	ratis, -is
join, unite	jungo, -ere, junxi, junctus

several, many	complūres, -a vel -ia, adj.
sometimes	nonnumquam, adv.
by day	interdiu, adv. (inter + dies)
by night	noctu, adv. (nox)
break through	perrumpo, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptus (per + rumpo)
fortifying, fortification, defence	munitio, -ōnis (munio)
running together, onset	concursum, -us
a hurling weapon, missile, spear, dart (used for fighting at a distance)	telum, -i
drive back, repulse	repello, -ere, repuli, -pulsus (re + pello)
an attempt	conātus, -us (conor)
stand off from, refrain, desist	desisto, -ere, -stiti, -stitus (de + sisto)

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam verte cum textu priore :

Ubi ea dies, quam constituerat cum legātis venit, et legāti ad eum revertērunt, negat, se more et exemplo populi Romāni posse iter ulli per provinciam dare ; et, si vim facere conentur, prohibītūrum ostendit. Helvetii, ea spe dejecti, navibus junctis ratibusque compluribus factis, alii vadis Rhodani, qua minima altitūdo fluminis erat, nonnumquam interdiu, saepius noctu, si perrumpere possent, conāti, operis munitiōne et militum concursu et telis repulsi hoc conātu destitērunt.

Voce in Latīnum verte :

That day — the day which he had appointed — he had appointed with the ambassadors — the day came — he denies — he denies that he can give — in accordance with the custom (**more**) — he shows that he will prohibit — disappointed in this expectation — having joined together boats — when they had joined boats together — often — oftener — having attempted — having attempted to break through — repulsed — repulsed by the strength of the work — repulsed by the onset of the soldiers — they desisted — they desisted from this attempt — I will refrain from mischief.

Latīne scribe :

1. When those days which he had appointed with the soldiers came, he denied that he could give a way to any. 2. He showed that he would prohibit them if they attempted to use (**facere**) violence. 3. The Helvetians were disappointed in this expectation (**spe**). 4. When they had made several rafts some of the Helvetians tried to break through. 5. They were repulsed by the strength of the work and by the onset of the soldiers. 6. They attempted to desist.

Inflect together **ea dies, ea spe, ratibus compluribus, minima altitūdo.**

NOTES.

1. **Se . . . posse** : constr.? XIV. 1, 2.

2. **More, exemplo** : XXVIII. 1.

3. **Prohibitūrum** : supply **esse** ; also the subject **se** from the preceding clause, and the object **eos**. **Se eos prohibitūrum esse ostendit** : *He showed that he would prevent them.* Cf. XXV. 1.

4. **Navibus . . . factis** : constr. of these two phrases? How translated? XXVI. 2.

5. **Navis, ratis** : gender? X. 1, *b*.

6. **Munitiōne, concursu, telis** : abl. *without prep.* showing *means or instrument*. Cf. XLII. 2 ; A. 248, *c* ; H. 420 ; App. 24, *g*.

PENSUM QUADRAGESIMUM SEXTUM.**VOCABULARIUM.**

leave behind, leave	relinquo, -ere, -līqui, -lictus
way	via, -ae (<i>cf. iter</i>)
on account of	propter, <i>praep. c. acc.</i>
narrow straits, narrow pass	angustiae, -ārum (<i>angustus, narrow</i>)
willingly, of one's own accord	sponte, <i>abl. ; gen. spontis</i>
intercessor, mediator	deprecātor, -ōris, <i>m. (preco)</i>
to obtain by request, obtain, gain	impetro (1)

favor, popularity	gratia, -ae
giving freely, liberality, bribery	largitio, -ōnis
desire, be eager for	studeo, -ēre, studui
new	novus, -a, -um
new things, a revolution	novae res
well doing, kindness, benefit	beneficium, -i (bene + facio)
bind	obstringo, -ere, -strinxi, -strictus

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam transfer :

Relinquebātur una per Sequanos via, qua, Sequanis invītis, propter angustias ire non poterant. His cum sua sponte persuadēre non possent, legātos ad Dumnorigem Aeduū mittunt, ut eo deprecatōre a Sequanis impetrārent. Dumnorix gratia et largitiōne apud Sequanos plurimum poterat, et Helvetiis erat amīcus, quod ex ea civitatē Orgetorigis filiam in matrimonium duxerat, et cupiditatē regni adductus novis rebus studēbat, et quam maximas civitates suo beneficio habēre obstrictas volēbat.

Voce in Latīnum verte :

There was left — there was left one way — one way through the Sequanians — where — where they could go — they could not go — since (when) — when they could not persuade these — he persuaded these — an ambassador — they send an ambassador — he sends ambassadors — they sent ambassadors — they send to obtain by entreaty — that they might obtain from the Sequanians at his intercession — Dumnorix was very powerful — he was powerful by his popularity — by bribery — friend — Dumnorix was a friend — he was a friend to the Helvetians — Dumnorix was desiring — he was desiring a revolution — he was wishing — Dumnorix was wishing to have — to have states — as many states as possible — to have states bound by kindness.

Latīne scribe :

1. One way is left where they cannot go against the will of the Sequanians. 2. He cannot (*is not able*) persuade them to do it of

their own accord. 3. They sent an ambassador to Dumnorix so that they might obtain their request by his intercession. 4. The Helvetians were very powerful, but (*sed*) were not friends to the Romans. 5. Dumnorix married the daughter of Orgetorix. 6. The people were influenced by a desire of royal power, and were eager for a revolution. 7. The men will desire to have as many states as possible under obligations (*obstrictas*) because of their kindness.

Latine responde :

Quot viae per Sequanos relinquebantur? Cur (*why*) ire non poterant? Sequanisne persuadere poterant? (Minime, Sequanis persuadere non poterant.) Ad quem legatos mittunt? Quis erat Dumnorix? Nonne Dumnorix Sequanis erat amicus? Cujus filiam Dumnorix in matrimonium duxerat? Quibus (*what*) Dumnorix studēbat? Quae Dumnorix volēbat? In quo casu est *angustias*? *his*? *sponte*? *gratia*? *Sequanis*? *regni*? *rebus*? *beneficio*?

NOTES.

1. **Relinquebātur** : *there was remaining*. The expletive “there” may be supplied to take the place of the subj. (*via*) which follows the verb. Cf. *erant* . . . *duo*, XXXVII.

2. **Sequanis invītis** : cf. *se invito*, XLIV. 5.

3. **His** : construction? XIV. 3. **Cum** : conj., *when, since, because*.

4. **Possent** : subjunctive with *cum*, a causal clause of situation. A. 326; H. 517; App. 26, II. 3, c.

5. **Eo deprecatōre** : *with him as an intercessor, at his intercession*. Observe that here the abl. abs. consists of a pronoun and a noun. What other forms are used in this construction?

6. **Ut . . . impetrārent** : constr.? XXXIII. 6.

7. **Plurimum poterat** : *was very powerful*. Cf. *plurimum* . . . *possent*, XXV. text.

8. **Rebus** : constr.? XIV. 3.

PENSUM QUADRAGESIMUM SEPTIMUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

and so, therefore	<i>itaque, adv.</i>
hostage	<i>obses, obsidis, c.</i>
to announce back, report	<i>renuntio (l)</i>
understand, know	<i>intellego, -ere, -lexi, -lectus</i>
he knew it would be	<i>intellegēbat . . . futūrum (esse)</i>
to be made <i>or</i> done, to happen	<i>fio, fieri, factus sum (cf. facio)</i>
full of war, warlike	<i>bellicōsus, -a, -um (bellum)</i>
open	<i>patens, patentis, adj. (cf. patēbat)</i>
pertaining to grain, fruitful	<i>frumentarius, -a, -um (frumentum)</i>

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam verte cum textu priōre :

Itaque rem suscipit, et a Sequanis impetrat, ut per fines suos Helvetios ire patiantur, obsidesque uti inter sese dent perficit : Sequani, ne itinere Helvetios prohibeant ; Helvetii, ut sine maleficio et injuria transeant. Caesari renuntiātur, Helvetiis esse in animo per agrum Sequanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum fines facere, qui non longe a Tolosatium finibus absunt, quae civitas est in provincia. Id si fieret, intellegēbat, magno cum periculo provinciae futūrum, ut homines bellicōsos, populi Romāni inimīcos, locis patentibus maximeque frumentariis finitimos habēret.

Voce in Latīnum verte :

He undertakes — he undertakes the matter (**rem**) — he obtains — he obtains so that they permit (he prevails upon them to permit) — so that they permit the Helvetians to go — he causes (**perficit**) — he causes them to give (**ut dent**) hostages — he causes that the Sequanians do not hinder the Helvetians — it is reported — it is reported that the Helvetians intend — to make a journey (to march)

— who are distant — not far distant — which state (and this state) — this thing — if this should happen — he knew — he knew it would be — with great danger (attended with great danger) — with great danger to the province — that it should have — that it should have warlike men — a warlike man — a neighbor — neighbors — places — in places — in especially fruitful places — there were many places.

Latīne scribe :

1. They obtained permission (**impetro**) from the people, so that they permitted them to go through the fields. 2. Dumnorix caused hostages to be given between the Sequanians and the Helvetians. 3. The men reported to Caesar that the people intended (**populo esse in animo**) to march without mischief. 4. If these things should happen, they thought it would be attended with (**cum**) great danger. 5. Warlike men were the enemies of the Roman people, and dwelt in fruitful places.

Latīne responde :

Quis rem suscepit? Quid impetrāvit? Qui obsides inter se dedērunt? Quid Caesari renuntiātum est? Qua (*where*) Santones incolēbant? Quid periculōsum (*dangerous*) futūrum intellegēbat? In qua constructione est *Sequanis*? *itinere*? *maleficio*? *finibus*? *provincia*? *locis*? Quo genere est *obses*? (XXXIX. 4.)

Inflect the whole of the verb **sum**, observing the stems. A. 119; H. 204; App. 15.

NOTES.

1. **Helvetiis esse in animo** : (*that*) *to the Helvetians it is in mind, (that) the Helvetians intend*. Cf. **sibi esse in animo**, XL. Vocab. **Esse** : constr.? XIV. 1.

2. **Fio** is used as the passive of **facio**. For inflection, *vid.* A. 142; H. 294; App. 16.

3. **Futūrum** : supply **esse**, thus forming the future infin. Why inf.? XIV. 1. Observe that the ending is **-um**, and not **-us**, because the participle **futūrus**, like any adj., must agree with its subject in gender, number, and case. The subject is the substantive clause **ut . . . habēret**.

4. The adjective-ending **-arius** means *pertaining to, belonging to*, and is represented in English by the termination *-arian*, or *ary*: e. g. **agrarius**, *agrarian*; **auxiliarius**, *auxiliary*.

5. The adjective-ending **-ōsus** denotes *fulness*, and in many cases is the equivalent of the English adjective-ending *-ose*, or *-ous*; e. g. **belli-c-ōsus**, *full of war, bellicose*; **verb-ōsus**, *full of words, verbose*; **calamit-ōsus**, *calamitous*.

6. **Obsides**: hostages were persons given as a pledge for the fulfilment of the conditions of a treaty, and were subject to death if the conditions were violated.

PENSUM QUADRAGESIMUM OCTAVUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

on account of, for

Titus

place over or before, put in command

in that place, there

write together, enroll, enlist

around, about, near

to winter, to pass the winter

lead out, lead forth

winter, pertaining to winter

winter quarters, winter camp

above, high

nearer, hither

seventh

from that place, thence

beyond, without

across

first

ob, *praep. c. acc.* (in composition, *in the way of, against*)

Titus, -i (abbr. **T.**)

praeficio, -ere, -fēci, -fectus
(*prae + facio*)

ibi, *adv.*

conscribo, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptus
(*cum + scribo*)

circum (*praep. c. acc.*)

hiemo (1) (*cf. hiems et hiberna*)

edūco, -ere, eduxi, eductus (*e + dūco*)

hibernus, -a, -um

hiberna, -ōrum (*supply castra*)

superus, -a, -um

citerior, **citerius** (*no pos.*)

septimus, -a, -um (*septem*)

inde, *adv.* (*cf. ibi*)

extra, *praep. c. acc.*

trans, *praep. c. acc.*

primus, -a, -um

Derivativa Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam verte cum textu priore :

Ob eas causas ei munitiōni, quam fecerat, T. Labiēnum legātum praefēcit; ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit duasque ibi legiōnes conscribit et tres, quae circum Aquileiam hiemābant, ex hibernis edūcit, et qua proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpes erat, cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit. Ibi Centrōnes et Graioceli et Caturiges locis superioribus occupātis itinere exercitum prohibēre conantur. Compluribus his proeliis pulsus, ab Ocelo, quod est ceteriōris provinciae extrēmum, in fines Vocontiōrum ulteriōris provinciae die septimo pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fines ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvos exercitum ducit. Hi sunt extra provinciam trans Rhodanum primi.

The dictation exercise will hereafter be omitted, as teachers and pupils have become familiar with the plan. It is hoped they will continue its practice in each lesson. Mere translation is by no means the whole work of the student. At no stage in the study of Latin should either teacher or student fall below the standard of the ability to render short passages into Latin or English when either language is pronounced. This ability is to be secured and maintained only by continued daily dictation exercises on the general plan heretofore pursued.

Latīne scribe :

1. For this reason they placed lieutenants in command of the fortifications which they were making. 2. Five legions which Caesar had enlisted came together from the nearer province. 3. Several peoples having seized the higher places attempted to stop (**prohibēre**) the army on the march. 4. The soldiers came to Ocelum, which is the farthest town in the province. 5. The Allobroges dwelt without the province across the river.

Latīne Responde :

Quem Caesar ei munitiōni praefēcit? Quo Caesar contendit? Quomodo Caesar contendit? Quot legiōnes ibi conscripsit? Quot legiōnes ex hibernis eduxit? Quo ire contendit? Qui populi pro-

hibēre conāti sunt? Qui pulsi sunt? Quo Caesar pervenit? Quo exercitum duxit? Quem locum Allobroges incoluērunt?

Explain the ablatives in this lesson, and as time permits in preceding lessons.

NOTES.

1. **Ei munitiōni**: dative, governed by prep. **prae** compounded with the verb **praefēcit**. *He placed . . . in command of that fortification* (**datīvus cum composita prae**). A. 228; H. 386, App. 21, c.

2. **Magnis itineribus**: the abl. is used (with the prep. **cum**, or with an adj. in agreement, or with a limiting genitive) to describe the action of the verb, and is called the *Ablative of Manner* (**Ablātivus Modi**). A. 248, and Note; H. 419, III; App. 24, i.

3. **Locis . . . occupātis, compluribus . . . pulsis**: constr.? XXVI. 2.

4. **Extrēmum**, sc. **oppidum**. With **hiberna** sc. **castra**; or **hiberna** may be explained as an adjective used substantively.

5. **Die septimo**: constr.? XXIV., Note.

PENSUM QUADRAGESIMUM NONUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

devastate, lay waste	populor, -āri, -ātus sum
aid, help	auxilium, -i
so, thus	ita, adv.
merit, deserve	mereor, merēri, meritus sum
almost	paene, adv.
sight	conspectus, -us (conspicio)
ravage, devastate	vasto (1) (cf. populor)
children	liberi, -ōrum
slavery, servitude	servitus, -tūtis, f. (servus, a slave)
lead away	abdūco, -ere, -duxi, -ductus (ab + duco)
storm, attack, capture	expugno (1) (ex + pugno)
have or keep from, owe, ought	debeo, -ēre, debui, debitus (de + habeo)

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam verte cum textu priore :

Helvetii jam per angustias et fines Sequanōrum suas copias traduxerant, et in Aeduōrum fines pervenerant eorumque agros populabantur. Aedui, quum se suaque ab iis defendere non possent, legātos ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium : Ita se omni tempore de populo Romāno meritos esse, ut paene in conspectu exercitus nostri agri vastāri, liberi eōrum in servitūtem abdūci, oppida expugnāri non debuerint.

Latīne scribe :

1. The Helvetians led their troops into the boundaries of the Aeduians and devastated their fields.
2. The Aeduians could not defend themselves and their property (*sua*) from the Helvetians.
3. The Aeduians sent men to him to ask help.

Inflect rapidly the verb *debeo*.

NOTES.

1. **Rogātum** : *to ask*, the acc. of the supine, is used after a verb of motion (**mittunt**) to denote *purpose*. A. 302 ; H. 546. What other constructions denote purpose ?

2. **Meritos esse** : why inf. ? XIV. 1.

3. **Nostri** : *adj.* modifying **exercitus**.

4. **Ut . . . non debuerint** : *so that . . . ought not*, differs from the **ut** clause before noticed, in denoting *result* (not *purpose*). Such clauses are called *consecutive* (**clausulae consecutivae**) and the subj. is called the subj. of result (**subiunctivus consecutiōnis**). It is used with **ut** (*negative ut non*), with the relative **qui**, and with relative adverbs. A. 319 ; H. 500, I., II. ; App. 26, II. 1, *a* and *b*. Clauses of purpose are used with verbs whose action is directed toward the future, while clauses of result are used with verbs denoting the accomplishment of an effort. A. 331, 332 ; H. 498, I., II. ; 501, 1, 2.

Review and classify the **ut** clauses in the preceding lessons.

PENSUM QUINQUAGESIMUM.

Indirect Discourse.

I. USE OF MODES.

When the thought of a writer or speaker is reported, not in the words originally used, but with those words altered to suit the construction of the reporter's sentence, the altered language is called an *indirect quotation*, and the construction is called *Indirect Discourse*; e. g. **Dicunt se meritos esse**, *They say that they have deserved* (lit., *they say themselves to have deserved*). Here the indirect quotation is **se meritos esse**. Their original language was **meriti sumus**, *we have deserved*.

In Indirect Discourse, a *declarative* clause like the above (**se meritos esse**) takes its subject in the accusative and its verb in the infinitive; but all *subordinate*, *imperative*, or *interrogative* clauses, in Indirect Discourse, take a verb in the subjunctive. E. g. **Dicunt ita se omni tempore de populo Romāno meritos esse, ut . . . agri vastāri non debuerint**, *They say that they have always so deserved of the Romans, that their land ought not to have been laid waste*. Here **ut . . . debuerint** is a subordinate clause in Indirect Discourse, and accordingly requires the subjunctive. Cf. (**Caesar**) **respondit, diem se ad deliberandum sumptūrum (esse); si quid vellent ad. Id. April. reverterentur**. (Text of XLIII., and Notes 5 and 6.) Here the subject **se** is in the acc., and the verb **sumptūrum (esse)** in the infinitive, because a *declarative* clause in Indirect Discourse. **Reverterentur** is the verb of an *imperative* clause in Ind. Disc., and **vellent** in a *subordinate* clause. A. 335, ff.; H. 522, ff.; App. 27, a, b, c.

II. USE OF TENSES.

The declarative clause will take the Present, Perfect, or Future Infinitive, according as it denotes time *present*, *past*, or *future*, with reference to the verb of saying; e. g. *They say that they deserve*

(now), **Dicunt se merēri** (pres. inf.). *They say that they deserved* (in the past), **Dicunt se meritos esse** (perf. inf.). *They said that they deserved* (at the time of saying), **Dixērunt se merēri** (pres. inf.). *They said that they had deserved* (past with reference to the time of saying), **Dixērunt se meritos esse** (or *fuisse*). A. 288; H. 537; App. 27, d, 1.

The subjunctive clauses also depend on the *verb of saying*. If that verb denotes *present* or *future* time, the *present* subjunctive will be used. If the verb of saying denotes *past* time, some *past* tense of the subjunctive will be used. This principle is called the law of *Sequence of Tenses*. A. 285, 286, 287, 336, B.; H. 491, ff., 525; App. 25, 27, d, 2.

Examples of Indirect Discourse and of the Sequence of Tenses :

1. I have seen Caesar (*Caesarem vidi*). 2. He says, "I have seen Caesar" (*Dicit, "Caesarem vidi"*). 3. He says that he has seen Caesar (*Dicit se Caesarem vidisse*). 4. He says that he sees Caesar (*Dicit se Caesarem vidēre*). 5. I say that he is mad (*Dico eum furere*). 6. I said that he was mad (*Dixi eum fuisse*). 7. I say that he was (has been) mad (*Dico eum fuisse*). 8. I come because you called me (*Venio quod me vocavisti*). 9. He says he came because you called him (*Dicit se venisse quod eum vocaveris*: perf. subj.).¹ 10. Hostages will be given (*Obsides dabuntur*). 11. He says that hostages will be given.²

NOTE.

1. If "he" in the Ind. Disc. means the same person as the subject of the main verb (**dicit**), the reflexive **se** must be employed, as in example 3; if "he" in the Ind. Disc. refers to a different person

¹ Notice that only the declarative clause takes the accusative and infinitive, and that the subordinate clause requires the subjunctive.

² Here the Latin idiom requires, as usual, the accusative and infinitive. It would read, "He says hostages to be about to be given." This would require a future passive infinitive; and as that form is not common in the Latin verb, a paraphrase may be used: "He says that it will be the case that (ut) hostages will be given" = *Dicit futurum esse ut obsides dentur* (pres. subj. with **ut**, denoting result).

from the subject of the main verb, the demonstrative **eum** must be used.

In Anglicum verte :

1. Gaudeo. 2. Dicit, "Gaudeo." 3. Dicit se¹ gaudēre.² 4. Caesarem vidi. 5. Dicit, "Caesarem vidi." 6. Dicit se³ Caesarem vidisse. 7. Imperābo. 8. Dicit, "Imperābo." 9. Dicit se imperatūrum esse. 10. Obsides dabuntur. 11. Dicit, "Obsides dabuntur." 12. Dicit futūrum esse⁴ ut obsides dentur. 13. Equum video. 14. Equum vidi. 15. Dicit se equum vidēre. 16. Dicit se equum vidisse. 17. Dixit se equum vidisse. 18. Si vales, bene est. 19. Dicit si valeas, bene esse. 20. Si valeas, bene sit. 21. Dicit si valeās,⁵ bene futūrum esse.

Latīne scribe :

1. I am in good health. 2. He says, "I am in good health." 3. He says that he⁶ is in good health. 4. Remember the former injuries of the Romans. 5. He said to Caesar, "Remember the former injuries of the Romans." 6. He said that Caesar should remember the former injuries of the Romans. (How must an *imperative* clause be rendered in Indirect Discourse?) 7. I came because you called me. 8. He says, "I came because you called me." 9. He says that he⁶ came because you called him. 10. I am glad. 11. He says that he⁶ is glad. 12. If you are his friend, I am glad.⁷ 13. He says that *if you are his friend*,⁸ he is glad. 14. He says that if you will withdraw your army, he will give⁹ hostages. 15. He knows that if you will withdraw your army, *hostages will be given*.¹⁰

¹ See, under Indirect Discourse, Examples, Note.

² The infinitive denotes time as past, present, or future, in relation to the time of the leading verb.

³ How would the sense be changed if **eum** were used instead of **se**?

⁴ See, under Indirect Discourse, Examples 10 and 11.

⁵ To what time does a conditional sentence of this form refer?

⁶ Should **eum** be employed, or **se**?

⁷ Which form of conditional sentence is this, as to time and as to the nature of the supposition?

⁸ Subordinate clause in Indirect Discourse. What mode should be employed?

⁹ *Himself to be about to give*, **se datūrum esse**.

¹⁰ See, under Indirect Discourse, Examples 10 and 11.

Answer the following questions on the above exercises :

Which of these sentences contain a direct quotation? Which an indirect quotation? When a direct statement passes into the indirect form, what change takes place in the form of the declarative verb? In the form of the subject noun? When an interrogative sentence passes into the indirect form, what mode does it require? An imperative sentence? What mode will all subordinate clauses require in the indirect form? In a conditional sentence, which clause is the declarative clause? When a conditional sentence passes into the indirect form, which clause will require the accusative and infinitive? What mode will the other clause require? Why? If the main verb of a declarative sentence is in the passive voice, and relates to future time, what change is often made in that verb in passing to the indirect form? What will determine the tense of the infinitive in the declarative clause of the Ind. Disc.? What will determine the tense of the Subjunctive in Ind. Disc.?

PENSUM QUINQUAGESIMUM PRIMUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

intimate friend, relative	necessarius, -i
relative (by blood), kinsman	consanguineus, -i
lay waste, plunder	depopulor (1) (de + populor)
flight	fuga, -ae
they betake themselves, retreat, go	se recipiunt
show, point out	demonstro (1)
besides, except	praeter (<i>praep. c. acc.</i>)
soil, ground	solum, -i
remaining, the rest	reliquus, -a, -um
look out for, wait, expect	expecto (1)
set up, determine, decide	statuo, -ere, statui, statūtus
he decided he ought not to wait	non expectandum sibi statuit
fortune (in plu. goods)	fortūna, -ae
consume, destroy	consūmo, -ere, -sumpsi, -sumptus (cum + sumo)

Derivativa Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam verte cum textu priore :

Eōdem tempore Aedui Ambarri, necessarii et consanguinei Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt, sese depopulātis agris non facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobroges, qui trans Rhodanum vicos possessionesque habēbant, fuga se ad Caesarem recipiunt et demonstrant, sibi praeter agri solum nihil esse reliqui. Quibus rebus adductus Caesar non exspectandum sibi statuit, dum, omnibus fortūnis sociōrum consumptis, in Santonos Helvetii pervenirent.

Latīne scribe :

1. Caesar was informed by the Aedui that they could not restrain (**prohibēre**) the violence of the men. 2. When these things had been pointed out (*abl. abs.*) Caesar determined that he ought not to wait. 3. The Allobroges went to Caesar and informed him that nothing was left. 4. Since the fields were devastated and the goods of their allies destroyed, they determined to wait until their near friends (**necessarii**) arrived. 5. At the same time he hastens to depart from the city and pushes on by forced (**magnis**) marches to the farther province.

Latīne responde :

Qui Caesarem certiōrem faciunt? Cur ab oppidis vim hostium non prohibēre poterant? Qui fuga se ad Caesarem recepērunt? Quae Caesari Allobroges demonstrant? Exspectavitne Caesar? Quid Caesar statuit? In qua constructiōne est *tempore? agris? oppidis? fuga? rebus? fortūnis?* In quo tempore est *faciunt? habēbant? recipiunt? statuit? pervenirent?* Quae pars oratiōnis est *sese? agris? facile? trans? reliqui? solum? adductus?*

NOTES.

1. **Aedui Ambarri**: the Ambarri Aeduans; i. e. a tribe closely related to the Aeduans.

2. **Necessarius** and **consanguineus**, although primarily adj., are here used substantively and therefore are treated as nouns.

3. **Caesarem certiōrem faciunt**: *inform Caesar*. Cf. **certiōres facti sunt**.

4. **Agris**: constr.? XXVI. 2. **Prohibēre, esse**: why inf.? XIV. 1.

5. **Nihil esse reliqui**: *that nothing is left*; more literally, *that there is nothing of a remainder*. **Reliqui** is the gen. of the adjective **reliquus**, used substantively, and limits **nihil**.

This construction where the gen. denotes the whole of which the part is designated, is called the *Partitive Gen.* (*Genetivus Partitivus*) A. 216; H. 397; App. 20, *d*. Cf. **quarum unam nobilissimos civitātis**.

6. **Non expectandum sibi statuit**: *he determined that he ought not to wait* (that it ought not to be waited by him).

a. With **expectandum** supply **esse**, because used with **statuit**, a verb of thinking. XIV. 1; App. 27, *b*.

b. **Sibi**: with the participle in **-ndus** (gerundive) and with the compound tenses of the passive voice the dative is used to denote the one by whom the act is to be done, or has been done. This is called the *Dative of Agent* (*Dativus Agentis*). A. 232; H. 388; App. 21, *a*.

7. **Dum . . . pervenirent**, XLIII. 2.

PENSUM QUINQUAGESIMUM SECUNDUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

the Saone	Arar, Araris , <i>m</i> .
extraordinary, incredible	incredibilis , <i>-e</i>
gentleness, smoothness	lenitas , <i>-tātis</i>
eye	oculus , <i>-i</i>
which (of two)	uter, utra, utrum (<i>gen. -ius, dat. -i</i>)
decide, judge	judico (1) (<i>cf. judex et judicium</i>)
boat	linter, lintris , <i>f. et m.</i>
scout, spy	explorātor , <i>-ōris</i> , <i>m.</i> (exploro)

fourth	quartus, -a, -um
but, in truth	vero
this side of	citra, <i>praep. c. acc.</i>
wakefulness, keeping watch (by night), a watch	vigilia, -ae
camp	castra, -ōrum, n.

Derivativa Anglica nomina.**In linguam Anglicam verte cum textu priore :**

Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Aeduorum et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit incredibili lenitate, ita ut oculis in utram partem fluat, judicari non possit. Id Helvetii ratibus ac lintribus junctis transibant. Ubi per exploratores Caesar certior factus est, tres jam copiarum partes Helvetios id flumen traduxisse, quartam vero partem citra flumen Ararim reliquam esse, de tertia vigilia cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus ad eam partem pervenit, quae nondum flumen transierat.

Latine scribe :

1. The rivers flowed with remarkable smoothness. 2. The Aeduians were not able to determine by the eyes in which direction the Saône was flowing. 3. They informed Caesar that the Helvetians had crossed this river by several boats joined together. 4. At the fourth watch almost all were this side of the camp. 5. Three legions set out from the camp with Caesar and arrived at the third watch.

Latine responde :

Quod flumen per fines Aeduorum et Sequanorum fluit? Quomodo Arar fluit? Quomodo Helvetii id transibant? Qui Caesarem certiores faciunt? Quae exploratores dixerunt? Quae pars citra flumen erat? Ubi Caesar e castris profectus est? Ad quam partem Caesar pervenit? In qua constructione est nomen *Arar*? (Nominativus, subjectum verbi *est*.) In qua constructione est *lenitate*? (Ablativus modi.) *lintribus*? (Ablativus instrumenti.) *vigilia*? *legionibus*? *traduxisse*? (Infinitivus perfectus, oratio obliqua cum *certior factus est*.) *possit*? (Subjunctivus consecutionis. XLIX. 4.)

NOTES.

1. **Fluat** is in the subjunctive because in an indirect question. The direct question would be, **In utram partem fluit?** A direct question is a question directly asked; e. g., *How old is he?* An indirect question is a question so incorporated into another sentence as to have lost its directly interrogative form; e. g., I know *how old he is*; or, Will you tell me *how old he is*? Here the word *how* is still interrogative, though the clause which it introduces has lost the question *form*. Indirect questions require the subjunctive. A. 334; H. 528, 2, N. 529; App. 26, II. 8, *a, b*.

2. **Explorātor**: nouns ending in **-tor** denote the agent or doer, and are of the masc. gender. Cf. **deprecātor**, XLVI. They are formed by adding **-or** to the stem of the perfect participle minus the stem vowel; e. g. **act-or**, from **actus** the perfect part. of **ago**; **conductor**, from **condūco**, perf. part. **conductus**. **Lenitas**: gender and formation? XIII. 5.

3. **Vigilia**: *watch*. The Romans, for military purposes, divided the night, from sunset to sunrise, into four equal watches (**vigiliae**), called **prima nox**, **nox concubia** (ending at midnight), **nox media**, and **gallicinium**.

PENSUM QUINQUAGESIMUM TERTIUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

impede, obstruct, disorder	impedio , -īre, -īvi, -ītus (in + pes)
not expecting, unaware	inopīnans , inopinantis , <i>adj.</i> (in, <i>neg.</i> + opīnor , <i>suppose, think</i>)
go to or against, attack	aggredior , aggredi , aggressus sum (ad + gradior , <i>walk, go</i>)
cut to pieces, kill	concīdo , -ere, -cīdi, cīsus (cum + caedo , <i>cut</i>)
command, entrust	mando (1) (manus , <i>hand</i> + do , <i>give</i>)
district, canton	pagus , -i

put away, hide

four

slay, kill

abdo, -ere, abdidī, abditus (ab + do)

quattuor, *adj. indecl.*

interficio, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (inter + facio)

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.**In linguam Anglicam verte cum textu priore :**

Eos impedītos et inopinantes aggressus magnam eōrum partem concidit ; reliqui fugae sese mandārunť atque in proximas silvas abdidērunt. Is pagus appellabātur Tigurīnus ; nam omnis civitas Helvetia in quattuor pagos divīsa est. Hic pagus unus, cum domo exisset patrum nostrōrum memoria, Lucium Cassium consulem interfecerat et ejus exercitum sub jugum miserat.

Latīne scribe :

1. Many of these, disordered and unwary, were attacked and slain.
 2. The Helvetians, having intrusted themselves to flight, arrived at the nearest woods. 3. They said that this one district was called Tigurīnus. 4. In the whole Helvetian state there are four districts.
 5. Lucius Cassius, the consul, had been slain, and his army sent under the yoke, by this canton. 6. This part of the Helvetians had gone from home in the recollection of our fathers.

Latīne responde :

Quis eos impedītos et opinantes aggressus est ? Quam partem eōrum Caesar concidit ? Quid reliqui fecērunt ? Quot pagi in omni civitatē Helvetia erant ? Quem hic unus pagus interfecerat ? Ubi hic pagus L. Cassium interfecerat ? Quo exercitus Romānus missus est ? Quae forma est *impedītos* ? (Participium perfectum.) Quae est ejus (*its*) constructio ? (Accusatīvus plurālīs, et cum *eos* congruitur.) Quae est constructio nominis *partem* ? (Accusatīvus, objectum verbi *concidit*.) Quae sunt partes primariae verbi *concidit* ? Quae ejus compositio est (*what is its composition*) ? In qua constructionē est *fugae* ? *pagus* ? *memoria* ? In quo casu est *eos* ? *sese* ? *silvas* ? *civitas* ? In quo modo est *exisset* ? *miserat* ?

Inflect together is pagus, omnis civitas, hic pagus.

NOTES.

1. *Fugae*: constr. ? -XIV. 3.

2. *Mandārunt* is contracted for *mandavērunt*. Cf. *oppugnārant*, XXXV. 1.

3. *Domo*: the abl. is used, generally with a prep., to denote that from which anything is removed or separated. Thus used, it is called the *Ablative of Separation* (*Ablatīvus Separatiōnis*). A. 243; H. 414; App. 24, *n*. Cf. *ab Aquitānis*, II.; *ex eo oppido*, XXXVIII.

4. *Cum . . . exisset*: XXX. 1.

PENSUM QUINQUAGESIMUM QUARTUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

or if	<i>sive, conj.</i> (<i>si</i> + <i>vel</i>)
whether, . . . or	<i>sive . . . sive</i>
accident, chance, misfortune	<i>casus, -us</i> (<i>cado</i>)
plan, design	<i>consilium, -i</i>
deity, a god	<i>deus, -i</i>
immortal	<i>immortālis, -e</i> (<i>in, neg. + mors, death</i>)
noted, remarkable	<i>insignis, -e</i> (<i>in + signum</i>)
disaster, calamity	<i>calamitas, -tātis</i>
bring on, inflict	<i>infero, -ferre, -tuli, illātus</i> (<i>in + fero</i>)
loose thoroughly, pay in full	<i>persolvo, -ere, -solvi, -solūtus</i> (<i>per + solvo, loose</i>)
only	<i>solum, adv.</i> (<i>solus</i>)
but	<i>sed, conj.</i>
not only . . . but also	<i>non solum . . . sed etiam</i>
individual, private	<i>privātus, -a, -um</i>
avenge, punish	<i>ulciscor, ulcisci, ultus sum</i>
father-in-law	<i>socer, soceri</i>
grandfather	<i>avus, -i</i>

Derivativa Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam verte cum textu priore :

Ita, sive casu sive consilio deōrum immortalium, quae pars civitātis Helvetiae insignem calamitatem populo Romāno intulerat, ea princeps poenas persolvit. Qua in re Caesar non solum publicas, sed etiam privātas injurias ultus est, quod ejus soceri L. Pisōnis avum, L. Pisōnem legātum, Tigurīni eōdem proelio, quo Cassium interfecerant.

Latīne scribe :

1. Whether by chance or by the design of the gods, Caesar inflicted punishment upon the Helvetians. 2. That part which first (**princeps**) inflicted signal disaster upon the Roman people now (**nunc**) paid the penalty. 3. He was avenging both public and private wrongs by this punishment. 4. Lucius Piso, the lieutenant, was the grandfather of Caesar's father-in-law. 5. Piso the elder (**major**) and Cassius were slain in the same battle.

Latīne responde :

Quae pars civitātis Helvetiae princeps poenas persolvit? Quas injurias Caesar ultus est? Nonne Caesar publicas injurias ultus est? (Certe, et etiam privātas injurias ultus est.) Quis Caesaris socer erat? Quis Caesaris conjunx (*wife*) erat? (Calpurnia, Pisōnis filia, Caesaris conjunx erat.) Quos Tigurīni interfecerant? Ubi Tigurīni L. Pisōnem interfecerant? In qua constructiōne est *deōrum*? (Genetivus possessiōnis.) *populo*? (Dativus cum composita *in*.) *injurias*? (Accusativus, objectum verbi *ultus est*.) *soceri*? *proelio*?

Inflect in concert the forms of **ulciscor**.

NOTES.

1. **Casu, consilio** : the abl. is used to explain the *cause* or *reason*, and is then called the *Ablative of Cause* (**Ablativus Causae**). A. 245 ; H. 416 ; App. 24, c.

2. **Civitātis** : constr.? LI. 5.

3. An English order from **quod** would be : **quod Tigurīni eōdem proelio quo Cassium (interfecerant), interfecerant Lucium Pisōnem legātum, avum Lucii Pisōnis ejus (Caesaris) soceri.**

PENSUM QUINQUAGESIMUM QUINTUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

follow up, pursue, attain	consequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum (cum + sequor)
take care, provide, cause	curo (1)
sudden, unexpected	repentīnus, -a, -um
20, twenty	XX. , viginti, <i>adj.</i> , <i>indecl.</i>
with difficulty	aegre, <i>adv.</i> (<i>sup.</i> aegerrime)
set in motion, drive, act, speak	ago, agere, egi, actus
but if	sin, <i>conj.</i> (si + ne)
follow up, continue	persequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum
persist, persevere	persevēro (1)
remember, recollect	reminiscor, reminisci (<i>defectivum</i>)
former, old	vetus, veteris, <i>adj.</i>
inconvenience, misfortune	incommodum, -i
former, ancient	pristinus, -a, -um

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam verte cum textu priōre:

Hoc proelio facto, reliquas copias Helvetiōrum ut consequi posset, pontem in Arare faciendum curat atque ita exercitum tradūcit. Helvetii, repentinō ejus adventu commōti, cum id, quod ipsi diebus viginti aegerrime confecerant, ut flumen transirent, illum uno die fecisse intellegerent, legātos ad eum mittunt: ejus legatiōnis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiāno dux Helvetiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare egit: Si pacem populus Romānus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem itūros atque ibi futūros Helvetios, ubi eos Caesar constituisset atque esse voluisset: sin bello persequi perseverāret, reminiscerētur et veteris incommodi populi Romāni et pristinae virtūtis Helvetiōrum.

Latīne scribe :

1. When this battle had been fought, he caused a bridge to be made across the Saône. 2. When the Helvetians knew that he had done in one day that which they had accomplished with the greatest difficulty in twenty days, they sent ambassadors. 3. Divico said if the Roman people would make peace with the Helvetians, they would go and remain where Caesar had desired them to be. 4. Divico said if Caesar persisted in continuing (*to continue*) in war, let him remember the former disaster of the Roman people.

Latīne responde :

Cur Caesar pontem in Arare faciendum curāvit? Quid traduxit? Cur Helvetii commōti sunt? Quos ad eum mittunt? Quis legatīōnis princeps fuit? In quo bello dux fuerat Divico? Quae dixit Divico? (Divico dixit: Si pacem populus Romānus cum Helvetiis faciet, in eam partem ibunt, atque ibi erunt Helvetii, ubi eos constitueris atque esse volueris; sin bello persequi perseverābis, reminiscere et veteris incommodi populi Romāni et pristinae virtūtis Helvetiōrum.)

Observe the examples of indirect discourse (*oratio obliqua*) in this lesson. The answer given to the last question above shows the direct form as used by Divico. The quoted indirect form used by Caesar illustrates some of the changes from the direct to the indirect discourse.

NOTES.

1. **Proelio** : constr. ? XXVI. 2. **Posset** : XXXIII. 6. **Faciendum** : constr. ? XXI. 1, 2.

2. **Ut . . . transirent** : for subj., XLIX. 4; A. 332, and preceding note; H. 501, III. The clause is in apposition with **id**, the object of **confecerant**. **Fecisse** : why inf. ? XIV. 1.

3. **Itūros, futūros** : supply **esse**. For form and constr., XXV. I.

4. **Incommodi, virtūtis** : verbs of *remembering*, like **reminiscerētur**, and also verbs of *forgetting*, regularly take their object in the genitive. A. 219; H. 406, II.; App. 20, *g*.

PENSUM QUINQUAGESIMUM SEXTUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

unexpectedly	<i>improvīso, adv. (in + pro + video)</i>
rise against, attack	<i>adorior, -oriri, -ortus sum (ad + orior)</i>
with great toil, greatly	<i>magnopere, adv. (magnus + opus)</i>
attribute, ascribe, assign	<i>tribuo, -ere, tribui, tribūtus</i>
look down upon, despise	<i>despicio, -ere, spexi, -spectus (de + specio, look)</i>
greater by birth, ancestors	<i>majōr s natu, vel majōres (gen. majōrum, cf. magnus)</i>
learn	<i>disco, -ere, didici</i>
treachery, deceit	<i>dolus, -i</i>
ambush, ambuscade	<i>insidiae, -ārum (in + sedeo)</i>
strive, rely upon	<i>nitor, niti, nisus vel nixus sum</i>
from which thing, wherefore	<i>quare, adv. (qua + re)</i>
than	<i>quam, adv.</i>
more . . . than, rather . . . than	<i>magis . . . quam</i>
send together, commit, entrust,	
permit	<i>committo, -ere, -mīsi, -missus</i>
stand together, take a stand,	<i>consisto, -ere, -constiti, constitus</i>
stop, depend on, consist in	<i>(cum + sisto)</i>
slaughter, extermination	<i>internecio vel -nicio, ōnis (inter + nex, slaughter)</i>
name	<i>nomen, nominis</i>
give forth, transmit, hand down	<i>prodo, -ere, prodidi, proditus (pro + do)</i>

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam verte cum textu priore :

Quod improvīso unum pagum adortus esset, cum ii, qui flumen transissent, suis auxiliū ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūti tribueret aut ipsos despiceret : se ita a patribus majoribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtūte, quam dolo contenderent, aut insidiis niterentur. Quare ne committeret,

ut is locus, ubi constitissent, ex calamitāte populi Romāni et interneciōne exercitus nomen caperet, aut memoriam proderet.

Latīne scribe :

1. Divico said : As to the fact that (**quod**) he could bring aid to his men (**suis**), let him not greatly ascribe it to his own valor.
2. Divico said : We (**nos**) have learned to contend by valor rather than by treachery.
3. Divico said : Do not permit that the place where we stand take its name from the slaughter of the Roman army.
4. The Romans had unexpectedly attacked one canton of the Helvetians.
5. The Helvetians had learned from their fathers and forefathers to contend by bravery and not by ambushades.

Latīne responde :

Quomodo Caesar unum pagum adortus erat? Helvetiis suis auxilium ferre poterant? (Minime, — *by no means*, — Helvetii suis auxilium ferre non poterant.) Quae a patribus majoribusque suis didicerant? Quae sunt Diviciōnis verba in oratiōe recta? (Divico dixit : “Quod improvīso unum pagum adortus es, cum ii, qui flumen transierant, suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut tuae magnopere virtūti tribueris, aut nos despexeris; nos ita a patribus majoribusque nostris didicimus, ut magis virtūte quam dolo contendāmus aut insidiis nitāmur. Quare ne commiseris, ut is locus ubi constiterimus ex calamitāte populi Romāni et interneciōne exercitus nomen capiat, aut memoriam prodat.”)

As in the former lesson, the answer to the last question illustrates the difference between the direct form and the indirect form as quoted in the text.

NOTES.

1. The adverb **quam** used after a comparative is rendered *than*. How is it rendered with the superlative? XX. 1.

2. **Internecio** : gender? XXII. 1. **Nomen** : gender? X. 1. *c.* Formation of nominative? X. Rem. 3.

3. **Ne . . . tribueris**, *do not attribute* : the perfect subjunctive with **ne** is one of the three forms regularly used in classical Latin to express prohibition. A. 269, *a*; H. 484, IV., Note 1; App. 26, I. 3.

PENSUM QUINQUAGESIMUM SEPTIMUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

doubt, hesitation	dubitatio, -ōnis
bring to mind, commemorate	commemoro (l)
severely, with annoyance	graviter, <i>adv. comp.</i> gravius (gravis)
bear, endure	fero, ferre, tuli, latus
desert, merit	meritum, -i, <i>in abl. as adv.</i> deservedly.
fall to, befall, happen	accido, -ere, accidi (ad + cado)
some, any	aliqui, aliqua, aliquod, <i>adj., gen.</i> alicujus (alius + quis)
be on one's guard, take care,	
beware	caveo, -ēre, cavi, cautus
conscious	consciū, -a, -um (cum + scio)
take from, deceive, cheat	decipio, -ere, cēpi, -ceptus (de + capio)
dread, fear	timeo, -ēre, timui

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.**In linguam Anglicam verte cum textu priore :**

His Caesar ita respondit : Eo sibi minus dubitatiōnis dari, quod eas res, quas legāti Helvetii commemorassent, memoriā tenēret : atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito populi Romāni accidissent ; qui si alicujus injuriæ sibi conscius fuisset, non fuisse difficile cavēre ; sed eo deceptum, quod neque commissum a se intellegeret, quare timēret, neque sine causa timendum putāret.

Latīne scribe :

1. Caesar replied to Divico : "The less doubt is given to me because I hold in memory those things which you have called to mind." 2. Caesar endured it with the more annoyance in proportion (**quo**) as it had happened less deservedly to the Roman people. 3. If the Roman people had been conscious (to itself) of any wrong it would not have been difficult to take precautions. 4. The Roman

people were deceived in this, because they did not know *that anything had been done* (**commissum**) by them wherefore they should fear. 5. They did not think they ought to fear (it must be feared by them) without a cause.

Latīne responde :

Cui Caesar respondit? Cur sibi minus dubitatiōnis dabātur? Quas res Caesar in memoria tenēbat? Cur gravius eas res ferēbat? Alicujus injuriae sibi conscius erat populus Romānus? Cur populus Romānus deceptus est? Quae in oratiōne recta sunt Caesaris verba? (Caesaris verba in oratiōne recta sunt: "Eo mihi minus dubitatiōnis datur, quod eas res, quas (vos Helvetii legāti) commemoravistis memoria teneo, atque eo gravius fero, quo minus merito populi Romāni accidērunt: qui, si alicujus injuriae sibi conscius fuisset, non fuit difficile cavēre; sed eo deceptus, quod neque commissum a se intellegēbat, quare timēret, neque sine causa timendum putābat.")

NOTES.

1. **Dubitatiōnis**: constr.? LI. 5. **Dari**: why inf.? By what mode to be translated? XIV. 1. **Commemorassent**: for **commemoravissent**. Cf. XXXV. I.

2. **Gravius**: for formation of the Comp. *vid.* XV. 2.

3. **Eo** and **Quo** followed by comparatives may be rendered, *the . . . the*, or *in proportion . . . as*; thus, **eo gravius . . . quo minus** with *the more annoyance . . . the less*, etc. A. 250, R; H. 417, 2.

4. **Sibi conscius**: *conscious to themselves*. Adjectives of quality take the dative to denote the object to which the quality is directed. Cf. **proximique sunt Germānis**. A. 234; H. 391; App. 21, b.

5. **Commissum**: supply **esse**. Also supply **esse** with **timendum**, forming the passive periphrastic conjugation. XLII. 4. The construction is impersonal, *it was to be feared*, but it is better to render by the personal construction: *nor did they* (populus Romānus) *think they ought to fear without reason*.

6. **Timendum**: sc. **sibi**, LI. 6, b.

PENSUM QUINQUAGESIMUM OCTAVUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

insult, indignity	contumelia, -ae.
forget	obliviscor, oblivisci, oblītus sum
	num, adv. (interrogative particle anticipating a negative answer)
late, recent	recens, recentis, adj.
try, attempt, assail	tempto vel tento (1)
harass, trouble, vex	vexo (1)
place aside, put away	depono, -ere, -posui, -positus (de + pono)
victory	victoria, -ae
so, so very	tam, adv.
strangely, insolently	insolenter, adv. (in, neg., + soleo)
glory, boast	glorior (1)
long, for a long time	diu, adv.
without punishment, with impunity	impūne, adv. (in, neg., + poena)

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.**In linguam Anglicam verte :**

Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium injuriarum, quod eo invito iter per provinciam per vim tentassent, quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexassent, memoriam deponere posse? Quod sua victoria tam insolenter gloriarentur, quodque tam diu se impūne tulisse injurias admirarentur, eodem pertinere.

Latīne scribe :

1. Caesar did not wish to forget the recent wrongs. 2. Could Caesar forget the former insult? 3. The Helvetians attempted a march through the province against his will. 4. Caesar was not able to forget the wrongs of the Aeduans and Ambarri. 5. The

Helvetians boasted insolently of their victory and wondered that they had inflicted the wrongs with impunity for so long a time.

Latīne responde :

Num Caesar veteris contumeliae oblivisci volēbat? (Puto eum non voluisse.) Num Caesar recentium injuriarum memoriam deponere poterat? (Minime, Caesar . . . non poterat). Quomodo Helvetii iter per provinciam temptaverant? Quos populos Helvetii vexaverant? Quomodo Helvetii diu injurias tulerant? Quae in oratione recta sunt Caesaris verba? (Caesaris verba in oratione recta sunt: "Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci volo, num etiam recentium injuriarum quod me invito iter per provinciam per vim temptavistis, quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexavistis, memoriam deponere possum? Quod vestra victoria tam insolenter gloriamini, quodque tam diu vos impune injurias tulisse admiramini, eodem pertinent.")

Compare the *oratio recta* in answer to the last question with the *oratio obliqua* of the text.

Review the preceding vocabularies.

Inflect together **veteris contumeliae**, **eo invito**.

NOTES.

1. **Quod**, in respect to which : accusative of specification (**accusativus respectus**). This construction is used to denote that *in respect to which* anything is true. A. 240, c; H. 378; App. 22, c. **Quod si**, in respect to which, if, etc., may be rendered *but if*.

2. **Contumeliae**: constr.? LV. 4. **Tentassent**: uncontracted form? XXXV. 1.

3. **Quod . . . vexassent**: *that*, etc.; clauses in apposition with **injuriarum**.

4. **Victoria**: constr.? LIV. 1.

PENSUM QUINQUAGESIMUM NONUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

to be accustomed, be wont	consuesco, -ere, -suēvi, -suētus
a changing, a change	commutatio, -ōnis
grieve, be annoyed	doleo (2) (dolor)
crime, wickedness	scelus, sceleris, n.
following, second, prosperous	secundus, -a, -um (sequor)
meanwhile, sometimes	interdum, <i>adv.</i> (inter + dum)
long, prolonged	diuturnus, -a, -um (diu)
freedom from punishment, impunity	impunitas, -tātis (in + poena)
promise	polliceor, -ēri, pollicitus sum
to do sufficient, satisfy	satisfacio, -ere, -fēci, -factus (satis + facio)
establish, arrange, train, instruct	instituo, -ere, -stitui, institūtus
a witness	testis, -is, c.
response, reply	responsum, -i (respondeo)
go apart, depart, withdraw	discēdo, -ere, -cessi, -cessus (dis + cedo)

In linguam Anglicam verte cum textu priore :

Consuesse enim Deos immortāles, quo gravius homines ex commutatiōne rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eōrum ulcisci velint, his secundiōres interdum res et diuturniōrem impunitātem concedere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, si obsides ab iis sibi dentur, uti ea, quae polliceantur, factūros intellegat, et si Aeduis de injuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eōrum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sese cum eis pacem esse factūrum. Divico respondit: Ita Helvetios a majoribus suis institutos esse, uti obsides accipere, non dare, consuerint: ejus rei populum Romanū esse testem. Hoc responso dato discessit.

Latīne scribe :

1. Caesar said that the immortal gods are wont sometimes to grant prosperity and quite long freedom from punishment. 2. Since these

things are so, yet if hostages are given to me by you, that I may know that you will do those things which you promise, I will make peace. 3. Divico replied that his people were so trained by their ancestors that they were accustomed to receive hostages. 4. When this reply had been given Divico departed from the place.

Latīne responde :

Quae Dei immortāles facere consuērunt ? Cur interdum hominibus secundiōres res concēdunt ? Quos ab Helvetiis Caesar imperāvit ? Cur Caesar obsides imperāvit ? Quibus Helvetiī injurias intulerant ? Quae verba in oratiōne recta dixit Caesar ? (Caesar dixit : “Consuevērunt enim Dei immortāles, quo gravius homines ex commutatiōne rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eōrum ulcisci volunt, his secundiōres interdum res et diuturniōrem impunitatem concedere. Cum haec ita sint, tamen si obsides a vobis mihi dabuntur, uti ea quae polliceamini vos factūros intellegam, et si Aeduis de injuriis quas ipsis sociisque eōrum intulistis, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciētis, (ego) vobiscum pacem faciam.”) Quae verba in oratiōne recta respondit Divico ? (Divico respondit : “Ita Helvetiī a majoribus suis institūti sunt, uti obsides accipere, non dare consuerint ; ejus rei populus Romānus est testis.”)

The answers to the last questions show what were probably the exact words of the speakers. Contrast with the *oratio obliqua* of the text.

NOTES.

1. **Consuesse** : for **consuevisse**. XXXV. 1. In this verb the perfect tense has the force of the present. A. 143, c. N. ; 297, 1, 2 ; App. 17, b.

2. **Quo . . . doleant** : constr. ? XL. 1. App. 26, II. 1, b, c.

3. **Ulcisci, concedere** : certain verbs such as **volo, consuesco, possum, audeo**, etc. require an infinitive to complete their meaning. The infinitive so used is called the *Complementary* (completing) *Infinitive* (**Infinitivus Complementarius**).

4. **Secundiōres . . . res** : *more prosperous things, a considerable degree of prosperity.*

5. **Diuturniōrem**: *quite long*. The comparative may be rendered by the auxiliaries *more, rather, quite, too, considerable*.

6. **Factūros**: supply **esse**. **Uti . . . intellegat**? Constr.? XXXIII. 6. **Aeduis**: governed by **satisfaciant** supplied from the second clause following. A. 227, *e*, 2, N.; H. 384, II. 4, Note 1; App. 21, *c*. **Ipsis, sociis**: constr.? XLVIII. 1. **Responso**: constr.? how translated? XXVI. 2.

PENSUM SEXAGESIMUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

the following, next	posterus, -a, -um (post)
cavalry, body of horsemen	equitātus, -us (equito, <i>ride</i>)
send before	praemitto, -ere, -misi, -missus
see	video, -ēre, vidi, visus
desirously, eagerly	cupide (cupidus)
stranger, (public) enemy; <i>plu.</i> the enemy	hostis, -is
an army on the march, line (of troops)	agmen, agminis (ago)
alien, another's, foreign, unfavorable	aliēnus, -a, -um (alius)
little, <i>plu.</i> a few	paucus, -a, -um
fall, be slain	cado, -ere, cecidi, casus
five hundred	quingenti, -ae, -a
rider, horseman, cavalryman	eques, equitis (equito)
drive before, put to flight, rout	propello, -ere, -puli, -pulsus
boldly	audacter (audax), <i>comp.</i> audacius
make a stand, resist	subsisto, -ere, -stiti (sub + sisto)
arouse, attack, provoke	laccio, -ere, -īvi <i>vel</i> -īi, -ītus (lacio, <i>entice</i>)
began, commenced	coepi, coepisse (<i>defectivum</i>)

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

Anglice verte cum textu priōre:

Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Caesar equitatumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex

omni provincia et Aeduis atque eōrum sociis coactum habēbat, praemittit, qui videant, quas in partes hostes iter faciant. Qui cupidius novissimum agmen insecūti aliēno loco cum equitātu Helvetiōrum proelium committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo proelio sublāti Helvetii, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulerant, audacius subsistere nonnumquam et novissimo agmine proelio nostros lacescere coepērunt.

Latīne scribe:

1. On the next day the Helvetians moved their camp three miles.
2. All the cavalry were sent in advance by Caesar to see where the enemy would march.
3. Caesar's horsemen followed the rear of the Helvetians too eagerly, and engaged in battle in an unfavorable place.
4. The Helvetians were elated by this battle, because five hundred of their horsemen put to flight so great a multitude of Roman soldiers.
5. After these things they resisted boldly, and attacked our men on the rear.

Latīne responde:

Ubi castra movērunt? Quis idem fecit? Quot milites Caesar praemīsīt? Unde (*whence*) Caesar equitātum coactum habēbat? Cur Caesar equitātum praemīsīt? Quomodo Caesaris equitātus novissimum agmen insecūti sunt? Ubi equitātus Caesaris proelium commisērunt? Cur Helvetii sublāti sunt? In qua constructiōne est *die*? (Ablatīvus temporis.) *loco*? (Ablatīvus separatiōnis.) *idem*? (Objectum verbi *facit*.) In quo gradu comparatiōnis est *cupidius*? (Comparatīvus.) Quae forma est *insecūti*? (Participium perfectum.) *sublāti*? In quo tempore est *movent*? (Praesenti.) *habēbat*? *cadunt*? *propulerant*? In quo modo est *facit*? (Indicativus.) *videant*? (Subjunctivus.) *faciant*? *subsistere*? Quo genere est *hostis*? (X. 2, b.) *eques*? *agmen*? (X. 2, c.)

NOTES.

1. **Quem . . . coactum habēbat**: *which . . . he had* (having been) *collected*; i. e. he had the cavalry in a collected condition.

2. **Qui videant**: *to see*. Constr.? XL. I.

3. **Qui**: *these*; **quo proelio**: *by this battle*. When a relative introduces, not a subordinate, but an independent clause, the English idiom requires that it be translated by a demonstrative, usually with a conjunction.

4. **Quas faciant**: why subj.? LII. 1.

5. **Sublāti**: *elated*.; *vid. tollo*.

6. Derivative verbs like **lacesso**, ending in **-esso**, are called *intensives* (**intensīva**), and denote energy or eagerness of action. A. 167, c; H. 336, II. n. 2.

7. Verbs like **coepi**, wanting in one or more of the stems, are called defective (**verba defectīva**).

PENSUM SEXAGESIMUM PRIMUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

present	praesens, praesentis
for the present	in praesentia (<i>sc. tempora</i>)
rapine, plunder	rapīna, -ae (<i>rapio, seize</i>)
getting fodder, foraging	pabulatio (pabulor)
laying waste, ravaging	populatio (populor)
about	circiter, <i>adv. (circus, a circle)</i>
fifteen	quindecim (quinque + decem)
amply, largely, much	ample (amplus)
five each, five at a time	quini, -ae, -a (<i>adj. distributivum</i>)
six each, six at a time	seni, -ae, -a
be between or present	intersum, -esse, -fui

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam verte cum textu priōre :

Caesar suos a proelio continēbat, ac satis habēbat in praesentia hostem rapīnis, pabulationibus populationibusque prohibēre. Ita dies circiter quindecim iter fecērunt, uti inter

novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum non amplius quinis aut senis milibus passuum interesset.

Latīne scribe :

1. Caesar's men were restrained from battle by him. 2. He deems it (**habeo**) sufficient for the present to keep the soldiers of the enemy from plunder and foraging. 3. They marched so that the two armies were not more than five or six miles apart. 4. The rear of the enemy and our advance marched thus about fifteen days.

Latīne responde :

Quid Caesar satis habēbat? Quot dies iter fecērunt? Quot milia passuum inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum agmen intererant? In qua constructiōne est *proelio*? *rapīnis*? *dies*? (Accusativus temporālis.) In qua constructiōne est *interesset*? (Subjunctivus finis, *of purpose or end.*)

Inflect in full **novissimum agmen, quinis milibus**, and the verb **interesset**.

NOTES.

1. **Satis** (**esse**) **habēbat** . . . **prohibēre**: *he held that to prohibit was enough*; **prohibēre** is the subject of **esse** understood. The infinitive as a substantive may be used as the subject or object of another verb. A. 270, 1; H. 538; App. 28, *a*; XIV. 2.

2. After the comparative **amplius**, **quam** (*than*) is omitted, though supplied in translating. When **quam** is thus omitted after a comparative, the following noun is in the ablative. A. 247; H. 417; App. 24, *e*.

3. Numeral adjectives like **quini** and **seni** are called distributives. A. 95; H. 174; App. 10. Here they are used to indicate that the two armies were this distance apart each day.

4. **Interesset**: constr.? XLIX. 4.

PENSUM SEXAGESIMUM SECUNDUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

meanwhile	<i>interim, adv.</i>
daily	<i>quotidie vel cotidie (quot + dies)</i>
publicly, in the name of the state	<i>publice (publicus)</i>
ask repeatedly, demand	<i>flagito (1)</i>
for (in explanation or confirmation)	<i>nam, conj. (cf. pro)</i>
cold weather, cold	<i>frigus, frigoris</i>
place, put, situate	<i>pono, -ere, posui, positus</i>
if only, while, until	<i>dum, conj.</i>
mature, early, ripe	<i>matūrus, -a, -um</i>
indeed, at least	<i>quidem, adv. (not . . . even, ne . . . quidem)</i>
fodder	<i>pabulum, -i (pabulatio)</i>
carry from below, carry up	<i>subveho, -ere, -vexi, -vectus (sub + veho, carry)</i>
turn away	<i>averto, -ere, -verti, -versus (ab + verto, turn)</i>
not wish, be unwilling	<i>nolo, nolle, nolui (ne + volo)</i>

Derivativa Anglica nomina.**In linguam Anglicam verte:**

Interim cotidie Caesar Aeduos frumentum, quod essent publice polliciti, flagitare. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia sub septentrionibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, non modo frumenta in agris matūra non erant, sed ne pabuli quidem satis magna copia suppetēbat; eo autem frumento, quod flumine Arare navibus subvexerat, propterea minus uti poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvetii averterant, a quibus discedere nolēbat.

Latine scribe :

1. The Aeduans publicly promised to bring grain to Caesar.
2. As was said before, in the first chapter, Gaul slopes toward the north.
3. Caesar thought that not even a sufficiently great supply

of fodder was at hand. 4. The grain in that place was not ripe, because of the cold. 5. Caesar turned away from the Saône because he wished to follow up the Helvetians. 6. For this reason he was not able to use the grain. 7. Caesar's ships were bringing the grain on the river Saône.

Latīne responde :

Quoties (*how often*) Caesar frumentum flagitāvit? Quomodo Aedui frumentum polliciti erant? Cur frumentum non matūrum erat? Ubi Gallia posita est? Num pabuli satis magna copia suppetēbat? (Minime, non satis magna copia suppetēbat.) In quo flumine Caesar frumentum subvehēbat? Num Caesar eo frumento uti poterat? Cur Caesar eo frumento non uti poterat? Quo Helvetii averterant? Caesarne a his discedere volēbat? In qua constructiōne est *polliciti essent*? (Subjunctivus in oratiōne obliqua.) Quid cum modo indicativo verbum *ut* significat? Quid cum modo subjunctivo? In qua constructiōne est *Aeduos*? *frigora*? (Accusativus cum praepositiōne *propter*.) *agris*? (Abl. loci.) *frumento*? *Arare*?

Inflect the irregular verb **nolo**. A. 138; H. 293; App. 16.

The questions, especially those on constructions, are only suggestive, and it is now desirable to require the construction of every noun and the use of each subjunctive.

NOTES.

1. **Caesar . . . flagitāre** = **Caesar** (coepit) **flagitāre** : **flagitāre** is thus seen to be in reality a complementary infinitive (LIX. 3) depending upon **coepit** understood. The infinitive thus used in vivid narration, with the verb on which it depends omitted, is translated like the imperfect or perfect indicative, and is called the *Historical Infinitive* (**Infinitivus Historicus**). A. 275; H. 536, I. and N.; App. 28, d. Translate **flagitāre** as if it were **flagitābat**.

2. **Quod essent . . . polliciti**, *which they had promised*; this **quod** clause describes or characterizes *frumentum* by telling what *frumentum* is meant. A relative clause of this kind describing or giving some characteristic of the antecedent is called a clause of *characteristic*

and result; such a clause requires the subjunctive. A. 320; H. 503, I; App. 26, II. 2, *b*.

This clause [**quod essent publice polliciti**] is often explained as a subordinate clause in indirect discourse.

3. **Frumenta** : *standing grain, frumentum, grain (harvested)* and because in bulk, singular.

4. **Eo . . . frumento** : constr.? XXXIV. 3. What other verbs take the abl.?

PENSUM SEXAGESIMUM TERTIUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

bring together, collect	confero, -ferre, -tuli, collātus (cum + fero)
carry together	comporto (1) (<i>cf.</i> importo)
be near, be present, aid	adsum, -esse, -fui (ad + sum)
stand upon, be near at hand	insto, -stāre, -stiti, -stātus (in + sto)
measure	metior, metīri, mensus sum
call together, summon	convoco (1) (cum + voco, <i>call</i>)
highest	summus, -a, -um (<i>pos. superus</i>)
be over, be in command	praesum, -esse, -fui (<i>cf.</i> praeficio)
Vergobret, chief magistrate of the Aedui	Vergobretus, -i
create, appoint, elect	creo (1)
annual, yearly	annuus, -a, -um (annus)
life	vita, -ae
death, slaughter	nex, necis (<i>neco, slay</i>)
ability, power, authority	potestas (possum)

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam verte cum textu priōre :

Diem ex die ducere Aedui : conferri, comportāri, adesse, dicere. Ubi se diutius duci intellexit et diem instāre, quo die frumentum militibus metīri oportēret, convocātis eōrum principibus, quorum

magnam copiam in castris habēbat, in his Divitiaco et Lisco, qui summo magistratui praeerat, quem ‘ Vergobretum ’ appellant Aedui, qui creātur annuus et vitae necisque in suos habet potestātem.

Latīne scribe :

1. Caesar was put off from day to day by the Aeduans. 2. The Aeduans said that the grain was being collected and was being carried to Caesar. 3. The Aeduans put off Caesar too long. 4. It was necessary for Caesar to measure out grain to his men. 5. Liscus, who was over the highest office, was called Vergobret by the Aeduans. 6. The Vergobrets were appointed annually and had the power of life and death over their people (*in suos*). 7. Divitiacus and Liscus were among the chief men, whom Caesar called together.

Latīne responde :

Aedui ne Caesarem diutius ducēbant? Quae Aedui dixērunt? Quae Caesar intellexit? Quamdiu (*how long*) Aedui Caesarem duxērunt? Qui dies instābat? Quos Caesar convocāvit? Quot principes in castris habēbat? Qui in his erant? Quis summo magistratui praeerat? Quantum (*how great*) potestātem Vergobretus habēbat? Quae forma est *conferri*? (Infinitivus praesens passiva voce.)¹ Cur (*why*) infinitivus? (Oratio obliqua.) Quae forma est *comportāri*? *duci*? *instāre*? *metiri*? In qua constructiōne est *die*? *principibus*? *magistratui*? (Dativus cum composita *prae*.) In qua constructiōne est *oportēret*? Quid genus verbi (*what kind of verb*) est *oportēret*? (Verbum impersonāle.)

NOTES.

1. **Diem . . . Aedui :** *the Aedui kept putting him off from day to day.* **Ducere, dicere :** for form and rendering, LXII. 1.

2. **Conferri . . . dicere :** *they (Aedui) kept saying it (frumentum) was being collected, it was being brought on the way, it was at hand.*

¹ The term **vox** is employed as a convenient equivalent for the word *voice*. The word is not so used in classical Latin. Quintilian uses **faciendi modus** for *active*, and **patiendi modus**, for *passive voice*.

3. **Diutius** (*diu*): *too long*. **Oportēret**: why subj.? **Convocātis** . . . **principibus**: constr.? **Magistratui**: constr.? XLVIII. 1.

4. **Conferri**: for the inflection of **fero**, A. 139; H. 292; App. 16.

PENSUM SEXAGESIMUM QUARTUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

call to account, accuse, censure	accūso (1) (<i>ad + causa</i>)
buy, purchase	emo, -ere, emi, emptus
near, neighboring	propinquus, -a, -um (<i>propinquus, -i, a relative</i>)
sustain, assist	sublēvo (1) (<i>sub + levo, lighten</i>)
especially	praesertim
prayer, entreaty	prex, precis
set aside, desert, abandon	destituo, -ere, -stitui, -stitūtus (<i>de + statuo</i>)
complain	queror, queri, questus sum

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

In linguam Anglicam verte cum textu priōre :

Graviter eos accūsāt, quod, cum neque emi neque ex agris sumi posset, tam necessario tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab eis non sublevētur; praesertim cum magna ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum susceperit, multo etiam gravius, quod sit destitūtus queritur.

Latīne scribe :

1. The Aeduan chieftains were severely censured by Caesar because they did not assist him with grain. 2. Since he could neither buy grain nor take it from the fields, it was necessary that he be aided by them. 3. Caesar thought he ought to be aided in so critical a time, with the enemy so near. 4. Caesar said that he had undertaken the war influenced in a great measure (**magna ex parte**) by their entreaties. 5. Caesar was complaining the more bitterly because he had been abandoned.

Latīne responde :

Quos Caesar accusāvit? Quomodo eos accusāvit? Cur eos accusāvit? Num Caesar frumentum emere poterat? Eratne tempus necessarium? Qui Caesarem non sublevābant? Cur Caesar bellum suscēpit? Cur multo etiam gravius Caesar querebatur? Nonne Caesar ab Helvetiis destitūtus est? Quererisne quod pensum longum sit? Nonne hoc pensum breve est? Quae forma est *emi*? (Infinītivus, praesens, passīva.) *sumi*? *sublevētur*? *susceperit*? (Subjunctīvus, perfectus, tertia, singulāris.)¹ *queritur*? Qui subjunctīvus est *posset*? *sublevētur*? *susceperit*? (Subjunctīvus causae.) *destitūtus sit*? Quae sunt partes primariae verbi *queror*?

At this point the form of the lessons is changed, approximating the form to be hereafter employed in this classical series. To secure real, living acquaintance with the text and the language itself, the dictation exercises, the questions, and the answers in Latin must be rigidly continued every day. Do not leave a chapter and go on to another until the words are mastered so that their equivalents can be at once given in either language. This work insures thoroughness and high success. The references should be used just as often (and only as often) as may be necessary to a complete understanding of the constructions.

CAPUT SEPTIMUM DECIMUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

tum, *adv.*, then.

demum, *adv.*, at length, finally.

antea, *adv.*, before.

taceo (2), be silent, pass over in silence.

propōno, **-ere**, **-posui**, **-positus** (**pro** + **pono**), put forth, declare.

valeo, **-ēre**, **-ui** (no participle), be strong or powerful.

privātim, privately, individually, as private citizens.

multo *vel* **multum**, much (*comp.* **plus**, *super.* **plurimum**).

seditiōsus, **-a**, **-um** (**seditio**), seditious, mutinous.

improbis, **-a**, **-um** (*in, neg.*, + **probus**, *good*), bad, base, wicked.

¹ The authors have not thought it necessary, in every instance, to construct a full grammatical sentence in answer to the question **Quae forma est?** or **In qua constructiōne est?** but have purposely adopted the elliptical idiom of the class-room.

deterreo (2), frighten away from, deter, prevent.

praefero, -**ferre**, -**tuli**, -**lātus**, bear before, prefer.

dubito (1) (**duo** + **habeo**), be uncertain, doubt.

una, *adv.*, together.

coerceo, -**ēre**, -**ercui**, -**ercitus** (**cum** + **arceo**, *shut up*), hold together, restrain, coerce.

quantus, -**a**, -**um**, how great, how much; **tantus** . . . **quantus**, as much (or far) as.

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

Tum demum Liscus oratiōne Caesaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat, propōnit: Esse nonnullos, quōrum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat, qui privātīm plus possint quam ipsi magistrātus. Hos seditiōsa atque improba oratiōne multitudinem deterrēre, ne frumentum conferant, quod praestāre debeant; si jam principātum Galliae obtinēre non possint, Gallōrum quam Romanōrum imperia praeferre, neque dubitāre quin, si Helvetios superaverint Romāni, una cum reliqua Gallia Aeduis libertātem sint ereptūri. Ab eisdem nostra consilia, quaeque in castris gerantur, hostibus enuntiāri; hos a se coercēri non posse. Quin etiam, quod necessario rem coactus Caesari enuntiārit, intellegere sese quanto id cum periculo fecerit, et ob eam causam, quam diu potuerit, tacuisse.

NOTES.

The figures refer to the lines of the chapter.

1. **Quod**: *sc.* the antecedent **id**, the object of **propōnit**.

2. **Esse nonnullos**: form in dir. disc.?

3. **Plurimum valeat**: *is very great*. Cf. **plurimum posset**, *has the greatest influence*. **Valeat**: *mode?* LXII. 2. **Plus possint**: *have more power*.

4. **Quam**, after the comp. **plus**, *than*. Significance of the adjective ending -**osus**, XLVII. 5.

5. **Ne** . . . **conferant**: *from bringing together, from furnishing*. The negative clause of purpose with **ne** or **quominus** after a verb of

hindering or opposing may be rendered by *from* with the verbal noun in *-ing*. A. 331, *e*, 2; H. 505, II. 1; App. 26, II. 1, *a*.

6. **Praestāre**: *to furnish*. Some texts have **perferre**. **Debeant**: constr.? LXII. 2.

7. **Si . . . possint**, etc.: the unfriendly Aeduan chiefs say: **si . . . non possumus . . . praeferimus, neque dubitāmus**, etc.

8. **Superaverint**: the future perfect indicative in *oratio recta* becomes pf. subj. in *oratio obliqua*. A. 286, R.; H. 525, 2. **Quin**: meaning after an expression denoting doubt? XXV. vocabulary.

9. **Aeduis**: constr.? XLVIII. 1; also A. 229; H. 386, 2; App. 21, *c*. **Sint ereptūri**: form? XXV. 1. Why subj.? Observe the subj. here both in *oratio recta* and *oratio obliqua*.

10. **Quaeque . . . gerantur**: *and whatever . . . is done*; or, *those things which . . . are done*.

11. **Se**: i. e. **Liscus**. What would **eo** have meant instead of **se**? By reading in order it will be seen that **posse** is the principal, and **coercēri** the complementary, verb. **Quin etiam**: *moreover, nay even*. **Quod, conj.**: *as to the fact that, in that*. Cf. **quod adortus esset**, LVI. text.

12. **Enuntiārit**: uncontracted form? XXXV. 1.

13. **Fecerit**: constr.? LII. 1. **Quam diu**: *as long as*. **Potuerit**: why subj.?

14. **Tacuisse**: *had kept silent*. Since the time of the infinitive is relative to that of the principal verb (assuming that here to be past), we have time completed before past time, and therefore render by the pluperfect. A. 288; H. 537; App. 27, *d*.

The notes that accompany this and each of the following chapters are not intended merely for reference and as helps, but are to be mastered and recited. This applies to such phrases as **quam diu** and **tantus . . . quantus**, as well as to the new words. Special attention is called to the subjunctive. The reason for the mode should be required and given in each instance.

Latīne responde :

Cur Liscus dixit? Quid Liscus proposuit? Apud quos nonul-
lōrum auctoritas plurimum valet? Quomodo hi multitudinem deter-
rēbant? Num hi principātum Gallia obtinēre poterant? Imperia
quorum praeferēbant? Romanine Helvetios superavērunt? Nonne

Romāni Aeduis libertātem eripuērunt? A quibus nostra consilia enuntiāta sunt? Cur Liscus tam diu tacuerat? In quo modo est verbum *esse*? Cur infinitīvus? (Oratio obliqua.) In qua constructione est *valeat*? (Subjunctīvus descriptionis.) *conferant*? (Subjunctīvus finis.) *debeant*? *gerantur*? In qua constructione est *oratione*? (Abl. instrumenti.) *nonnullos*? (Accusativus, subjectum verbi *esse*.) *Galliae*? (Gen. possessionis.) *Gallia*? (Abl. comitatus.) *Aeduis*? (Datīvus cum composita *e*.) *eisdem*? (Abl. agentis.) *se*? *periculo*?

Latīne scribe :

1. Liscus, who was influenced by the speech of Caesar, declared that some were very powerful. 2. Those whose influence was very great prevented the people from furnishing grain. 3. If these chieftains could not get possession of the leadership, they preferred the rule of the Gauls. 4. These said that they did not doubt that the Romans would take away liberty from the Aeduans (Dat.). 5. The plans of the Romans, and those things which were being done in the camp, were reported to the enemy by these. 6. Liscus thought he could not restrain these men. 7. I know with how much danger Liscus informed Caesar. 8. When Liscus had been sternly rebuked by Caesar, he set forth those things which he knew. 9. I know that Liscus kept silent on account of this reason.

Let the infinitives and subjunctives in these sentences be carefully studied and explained.

CAPUT DUODEVICESIMUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

designo (1) (**de** + **signo**, *mark*), mark out, point out, designate.

sentio, -ire, **sensi**, **sensus**, perceive, think, feel.

plus, **pluris**, more, many (*pos. multus*).

praesens, -**sentis** (*in form, present part. of praesum*), being near, at hand, present.

jacto (1) (*freq. of jacio*), throw repeatedly, toss, discuss.

celeriter (**celer**), quickly, at once (*comp. celerius, sup. celerrime*).

concilium, -i (**cum** + **calo**, *call*), council, assembly; *cf. consilium*, plan.

dimitto, -ere, -misi, -missus (**dis** + **mitto**), send apart, dismiss.

retineo (2) (**re** + **teneo**, *hold*), hold back, retain.

quaero, -ere, **quaesivi**, **quaesitus**, seek, ask, inquire (*cf. queror* - *complain*).

solus, -a, -um (*gen. -ius, dat. -i*), alone.

conventus, -us (**cum** + **venio**), a coming together, assembly.

libere (**liber**), freely.

audacter (**audax**), boldly.

secreto (**secretus**, *part. of secerno, separate*), secretly, privately.

reperio, -ire, **repperi**, **reptus** (**re** + **pario**, *get*), find out, discover.

audacia, -ae (**audax**), boldness.

liberalitas (**liber**), liberality, generosity.

portorium, -i (**porto**), tax, duty. The *portoria* were taxes on exports and imports, bridge tolls, etc.

vectigal, **vectigālis**, n. (**veho**, *carry*) tax, revenue. The *vectigalia* were revenues from taxes on property; grain, stock, etc.

parvus, -a, -um (*comp. minor, sup. minimus*), small, little; *cf. magnus*, major, **maximus**.

pretium, -i, price.

redimo, ere, -ēmi, -emptus (**re** + **emo**, *buy*), buy back, buy up, purchase.

liceor (2), bid (as at an auction).

contra, *adv.*, contrary, in opposition (sometimes **contra** is a *prep.* meaning *against*, followed by the accusative).

audeo, -ēre, **ausus sum**, dare (*cf. audio, hear*).

nemo (**ne** + **homo**) (*dat. nemini*), no one, nobody. (The *gen.* and *abl. sing.* are supplied from **nullus**).

familiāris, -e (**familia**), belonging to the household, private.

res familiāris, property; **familiāris**, -is, a friend.

augeo, -ēre, **auxi**, **auctus**, increase.

largior (4), give freely, bribe.

sumptus, -us (**sumo**), expense.

semper, always.

alo, **alere**, **alui**, **alitus** *vel altus*, nourish, maintain, support.

largiter, largely, greatly (*cf. largior*).

potentia, -ae (**potens**), power.

illic (**ille**), in that place, there.

colloco (1) (**cum + loco**), place together, establish, arrange (with **nuptum**, expressed or understood, *give in marriage*).

uxor, **-ōris**, wife.

soror, sister.

nubo, **-ere**, **nupsi**, **nuptus**, veil one's self (*as for marriage*), marry, wed (*said of the woman*).

faveo, **-ēre**, **favi**, **fautus**, favor.

cupio, **-ere**, **cupīvi** *vel* **-ii**, **cupītus**, long for, desire, wish well to.

affinitas (**ad + finis**), connection, relationship by marriage.

odi, **odisse**, hate (*defective (cf. coepi), used only in the perfect but present in meaning*).

nomen, **nominis**, name, reputation, account.

deminuo, **-ere**, **-minui**, **-minūtus** (**de + minus**), lessen, impair.

antīquus, **-a**, **-um** (**ante**), former, old, ancient.

honor *vel* **honos**, **-ōris**, honor, dignity.

restituo, **-ere**, **-ui**, **-ūtus** (**re + statuo**, *set, place*), replace, re-establish, restore.

equester, **equestris**, **equestre** (**eques**, *horseman*), pertaining to a horseman, of cavalry, cavalry.

adversus, **-a**, **-um** (*pf. part. of adverto*), turned toward, opposite, adverse, unsuccessful.

perterreo (2) (**per**, *thoroughly*, **+ terreo**), thoroughly frighten, terrify.

Derivativa Anglica nomina.

Caesar hac oratiōne Lisci Dumnorigem, Divitiaci fratrem, designāri sentiēbat : sed, quod pluribus praesentibus eas res jactāri nolēbat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet : quaerit ex solo ea, quae in conventu dixerat. Dicit
 5 liberius atque audacius. Eadem secrēto ab aliis quaerit ; reperit esse vera. Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summa audacia, magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia, cupidum rerum novarum : complures annos portoria, reliquaque omnia Aeduorum vectigalia, parvo pretio redempta habere,
 10 propterea quod illo licente contra liceri audeat nemo. His rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse, et facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse ; magnum numerum equitatus suo sumptu semper alere et circum se habere ; neque solum

domi, sed etiam apud finitimas civitatē largiter posse ;
 atque hujus potentiae causa matrem in Biturigibus, homini 15
 illic nobilissimo ac potentissimo collocasse ; ipsum ex Hel-
 vetiis uxorem habere ; sororem ex matre et propinquas suas
 nuptum in alias civitates collocasse ; favere et cupere Hel-
 vetiis propter eam affinitatem ; odisse etiam suo nomine
 Caesarem et Romanos, quod eorum adventu potentia ejus 20
 deminuta, et Divitiacus frater in antiquum locum gratiae
 atque honoris sit restitutus. Si quid accadat Romanis,
 summam in spem per Helvetios regni obtinendi venire ;
 imperio populi Romani non modo de regno, sed etiam de
 ea quam habeat gratia desperare. Reperiēbat etiam in 25
 quaerendo Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis
 ante diebus esset factum, initium ejus fugae factum a Dum-
 norige atque ejus equitibus (nam equitatu, quem auxilio
 Caesari Aedui miserant, Dumnorix praeerat) : eorum fuga
 reliquum esse equitatum perterritum. 30

1. **Lisci**, of *Liscus* : limits **oratiōne**. A noun thus qualifying or limiting the meaning of another noun is in the genitive, *unless it is an appositive*. A. 214, *a* ; H. 395 ; App. 20, *e*.

3. **Celeriter** : adverbs are formed from adjectives of the third declension by adding the ending **-ter** or **-iter** to the stem of the positive. A. 148, *b* ; H. 304, IV. N. 1. How are adverbs formed from adjectives of the second declension ?

4. **Solo** : *sc. eo*.

5. **Audacius** : how is the comparative of adverbs formed ? XV. 2. **Secrēto** : the abl. sing. is sometimes used as an adv. A. 148, *e* ; 304, II. ; App. 9, *a*.

6. **Esse** : *sc. the subject ea, those things*. **Vera**, true (lit. true things), as a predicate adjective agrees, like a predicate noun, with its subject (*ea*) in case. A. 186, *b*, 1 ; H. 536, 2, 2. **Ipsum** : very, the very one. **Esse** : indirect discourse after **reperit**, he discovers that Dumnorix is the very man. **Audacia** : constr. ? XXXVIII. 4.

8. **Rerum** : the genitive is used with adjectives whose meaning requires an object of reference. A. 218; H. 399; App. 20, *a*.

9. Nouns like **vectīgal**, ending in **-al**, are vowel (i) stems and of the neuter gender. For inflection *vid.* A. 52; H. 63; App. 3, *c*. **Pretio** : the price of an object is regularly denoted by the ablative. A. 252; H. 422; App. 24, *k*. Do not confound the Eng. equivalent of **pretium** (*price*) with its syntax (*abl. of price*). **Redempta habēre** : *he had bought up (he had, having been bought up)*. **Redempta** modifies the preceding nouns.

10. A few verbs like **audeo**, having no perfect stem, use passive forms for tenses of completed action. These are called semi-deponents. A. 136; H. 465, Note 2; App. 13.

11. **Et . . . et** : *both . . . and*.

13. **Neque = et non**.

14. **Domi, at home** : this is called the locative case. Its form in the first and second declension, singular, is like the genitive. A. 258, *c*, 2; H. 425, 426; App. 24, *q*. **Largiter posse = largiter potentem esse**.

15. **Causa** : *for the sake of*.

17. **Sorōrem ex matre** : *sc. partam, sister on his mother's side, i. e. his half-sister*.

18. **Nuptum collocasse** : *had given in marriage* (lit. *had placed to marry*). The supine in **-um** is regularly used with a verb of motion to denote purpose. A. 302; H. 546, I. **Cupere** : for conjugation see verbs in **-io** in the third conjugation. A. 131; H. 217, *ff*; App. 12.

19. **Suo nomine** : *on his own account*. Constr.? LIV. 1.

21. **Deminūta, sc. sit** : why not **est**? XXXVIII. 5.

22. **Sit restitūtus** : for mode *cf. deminūta (sit)*. **Si quid** : *if anything*.

23. **Regni obtinendi** : lit. *the hope of the sovereignty to be possessed*. More freely, *the hope of possessing the sovereignty*.

24. **Imperio**, *under the government* : abl. both of time and cause.

25. **Quam habeat** is an adjective clause restricting the meaning of **ea**, and thus has the usual adjective position.

26. **Quod . . . esset factum** : *in regard to the unsuccessful cav-*

alry battle which had been fought (made). The clause is to be considered as an accusative of specification. A. 333, *a*; H. 516, II. 2, N.; LVIII. 1.

27. **Ante, adv.** **Paucis ante diēbus** : lit. *before by a few days = a few days before*. **Diēbus** : the abl. because denoting that *by which* two things (here two points of time) differ. A. 250; H. 423; App. 24, *f*. **Dumnorige, equitibus** : constr. ?

28. **Equitatu** : constr. ? XLVIII. 1. **Auxilio, as an aid** : the dative is used to denote the *purpose* or *end* which a thing serves. This is called the *Dative of Purpose or End* (**Datīvus Finis**). With this dative generally occurs another dative (here **Caesari**) of the person or thing concerned. A. 233; H. 390; App. 21, *f*.

Latīne responde :

Quis hac oratiōe Lisci designātus est ? Cur concilium dimisit ? Quem retinuit ? Quae ex eo quaesivit ? Quomodo Liscus dicēbat ? In qua constructiōne est *oratiōe* ? *pluribus* ? *res* ? *quae* ? In quo comparatiōnis gradu est *liberius* ? (In gradu comparativo.) *audacius* ? Quae ab aliis quaesivit ? Haecne erant vera ? Dumnorixne vir summa audacia erat ? Cur Dumnorix magnam apud plebem gratiam habēbat ? Nonne Dumnorix rerum novārum cupidus erat ? In qua constructiōne est *audacia* ? (Abl. qualitātis.) *gratia* ? *rerum* ? (Gen. c. adj. *cupidus*.) Quae redempta habēbat Dumnorix ? Cur Dumnorix ea parvo pretio redempta habēbat ? *Pretio* : constructio ? *illo* ? Quae sunt partes primariae verbi *licēre* ? *audeat* ? *Habēre* : cur in modo infinitivo ? *Audeat* : cur subiectivus ? Quomodo suam familiārem rem auxerat ? Quae comparavit ? Utrum est largiendum gerundium an gerundivus ? Quis suo sumptu equitātum aluit ? In qua declinatiōne est *sumptu* ? Qua de causa Dumnorix largiter poterat ? Quid hujus potentiae causa fecit Dumnorix ? Ex quo populo ipse uxōrem habēbat ? Ubi propinquas suas nuptum collocavit ? Quae forma est *nuptum* ? (Supinum.) Cur Helvetiis favēbat ? *Helvetiis* : cur dativus ? Quos Dumnorix odit : cur Dumnorix illos odit ? *Deminūta sit* : cur subiectivus ? Ubi Dumnorix summam in spem veniēbat ? In quo comparatiōnis gradu

est *summa*? Num Dumnorix imperio populi Romāni spem de regno habēbat? Quid Caesar reperiēbat? Quae forma est *quaerendo*? Quae sunt verbi partes primariae? Qui initium fugae fecerant? Quis equitatui praeerat? In qua constructiōne est *equitatui*? (Datīvus cum composita *prae*. *Prae* in compositiōne.) Cur Aedui equitātum miserant? Quomodo eōrum fuga reliquos equitātus afficiebātur?

Hereafter the questions in Latin will be omitted. The general plan of questioning in Latin so as to go over the text, which has been first read, then translated, then gone over in the dictation exercise, has been so well illustrated as not to require further space. The Glossary will supply terms necessary for an explanation of the constructions in Latin. It is earnestly hoped that the omission of the questions will not abate their use by the teacher or student. The dictation exercise, questions, and translating of English into Latin are essential to a real mastery of the subject. Hurrying over the text by merely giving the translation is not making haste in learning the language.

Latīne scribe :

1. Dumnorix, the brother of Divitiacus, was pointed out by this speech of Liscus. 2. Caesar thought he could not discuss these things when many were present. 3. Having quickly dismissed the council, he asked Liscus to tell (*dicere vel ut diceret*) what (things) were said in the assembly. 4. The others said that Liscus had spoken the truth (true things). 5. Dumnorix was a man of great boldness, and desirous of a revolution. 6. For many years the taxes had been bought up by him. 7. Others did not dare to bid, when Dumnorix was bidding. 8. Dumnorix increased his property by buying the revenues (the revenues having been bought up). 9. In this manner (*modus*) large means were procured for bribing. 10. A great number of cavalry were supported by Dumnorix at his own expense. 11. He gave his female relatives in marriage, in order that (*ut*) he might be powerful not only at home but also in the other states. 12. He favored the Helvetians because he had married (led in marriage) the daughter of their chief (*princeps*). 13. Dumnorix hates the Romans because he thinks his influence is lessened by their arrival. 14. Dumnorix thought his brother would be restored into his former place of honor. 15. He had the highest expectation (came into the highest hope) of getting possession of the kingdom

by means of (**per**) the Helvetians. 16. Under the rule of the Romans he despaired of the influence which he had. 17. Dumnorix and his cavalry began the flight (made the beginning of the flight) in the unsuccessful cavalry battle. 18. The Aedui had placed Dumnorix in command of the cavalry which they sent as an aid to Caesar. 19. Dumnorix thought that the flight of his men would terrify the rest of the cavalry. 20. The flight was made in order that the rest of the cavalry might be terrified.

CAPUT UNDEVICESIMUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

cognosco, -ere, -nōvi, -nitus (**cum + nosco, learn**), learn thoroughly; *in perf. tense, has learned and therefore knows.*

accēdo, -cedere, -cessi, -cessus (**ad + cedo, go**), go to, approach, be added.

tradūco, -ducere, -duxi, -ductus (**trans + duco**), lead across or over.

injussu (**in, neg., + jubeo, order**), found only in the *abl.*, without order or command.

insciens, -entis (**in + scio**), not knowing, ignorant.

animadverto, -ere, -verti, -versus (**animus + ad + verito**), turn the mind to, observe, perceive, *used with in before a substantive*, to attend to, to punish.

repugno (1) (**re + pugno**), fight back, oppose, resist.

studium, -i (**studeo**), zeal, devotion.

egregius, -a, -um (**e + grex, herd**), out of the (common) herd, *therefore* remarkable, excellent.

justitia, -ae, justice, integrity, uprightness.

temperantia, -ae, moderation, self-control.

supplicium, -i (**sub + plico, fold or bend**), a kneeling as a suppliant or to receive punishment, *hence* punishment.

offendo, -ere, -fendi, -fensus, strike against, wound, offend.

vereor (2), dread, fear.

quisquam, quaequam, quidquam, vel quicquam, any one, anything.

voco (1), call, summon.

interpres, -pretis, c. interpreter.

removeo, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtus (**re** + **moveo**), move back, remove.

colloquor, -loqui, -locūtus **sum** (**cum** + **loquor**), speak with, converse.

simul, *adv.*, at the same time, at once.

commonefacio, -ere, -fēci, -factus (**cum** + **moneo** + **facio**), remind forcibly, admonish, impress upon.

separātim (**separo**), separately.

peto, -ere, -īvi *vel* **ii**, -ītus, aim at, attack, seek, ask.

hortor (1), exhort, urge, encourage.

offensio, -ōnis (**offendo**), a striking against, wounding, offence.

statuo, -ere, **statui**, **statūtus**, place, determine, judge, take measures.

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

Quibus rebus cognitis, cum ad has suspiciōnes certissimae res accederent, quod per fines Sequanōrum Helvetios traduxisset, quod obsides inter eos dandos curasset, quod ea omnia non modo injussu suo et civitātis, sed etiam insci-

5 entibus ipsis fecisset, quod a magistrātu Aeduōrum accusarētur, satis esse causae arbitrabātur, quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut civitātem animadvertere jubēret. His omnibus rebus unum repugnābat, quod Divitiaci fratris summum in populum Romānum studium, summam in se

10 voluntātem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognoverat: nam, ne ejus supplicio Divitiaci animum offenderet, verebātur. Itaque prius quam quicquam conarētur, Divitiacum ad se vocāri jubet et quotidianis interpretibus remōtis

15 familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rerum fidem habēbat, cum eo colloquitur: simul commonefacit, quae ipso praesente in concilio Gallōrum de Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit, quae separātim quisque de eo apud se dixerit. Petit atque hortātur, ut sine ejus offensiōne animi vel ipse de eo

20 causa cognita statuatur, vel civitātem statuere jubeat.

NOTES.

1. **Cum** . . . **accederent**: a causal clause of situation. XLVI. 4.

2. **Traduxisset**: constr.? XXXVIII. 5.

3. **Dandos**: gerundive modifying **obsides**. XXI. 1, 2. **Curasset**: uncontracted form?

4. **Injussu**, etc.; *without his (Caesar's) order and that of the state (Aedui)*. Construction? XLVIII. 2. **Inscientibus ipsis**: *without their knowledge*.

5. **Ipsis** = **Caesare et Aeduis**. Construction? XXVI. 2. **Magistrātu** = **Vergobreto, Lisco**. **Quod accusarētur**: subjunctive in a causal clause, because expressing the thought of Caesar as if he were another person than the writer. It is practically an expansion of the preceding **cum** clause.

6. **Causae**: construction? LI. 5.

7. **Animadverteret**: why subj.? LII. 1.

8. **Unum**: *one thing, one consideration*. **Rebus**: constr.? XIV. 3.

11. **Ne**, construed with **verebātur**, a verb of fearing, is rendered *that*. A. 331, *f.*; H. 498, III. N. 1. The Latins treated such a clause as denoting a wish or purpose. Thus **ne**, a negative, indicates that the object was not desired.

12. **Prius quam**, *before*, also written as one word, has the same construction as **cum** temporal. A. 327; H. 520, I., II.; App. 26, II. 5, *b.* **Quicquam**: for inflection, A. 105, *c.*; H. 190, 2, 1; App. 11, *g.*

Inflect also **quisque**, and note the difference between the adjective form and the substantive form.

15. **Familiārem**: here a noun. Cf. **rem familiārem** in Cap. 18,

11. **Cui**: *in whom*. **Omnium rerum**: *in every respect, respecting everything*. Observe that *to* or *for* will not always best translate the dative, nor will *of* always most appropriately translate the genitive. A good translation is one that gives the best sense in idiomatic English. For construction of **cui**, XIV. 3. **Fidem habēbat** = **confidēbat**.

16. **Ipsō**: i. e. **Divitiaco**.

17. **Sint dicta**: for mode, LII. 1. The tense is perfect (not pluperfect) because used to represent past action after a primary tense. Cf. **accidat**, Cap. 18, 22.

18. **Eo**, i. e. **Dumnorige**. **Dixerit**: cf. **sint dicta**, and thus determine the tense of **ostendit**.

20. **Causa cognita**: abl. abs., *after investigating the case*. **Statuat**: constr.? XXXIII. 6.

Give the principal parts of the verbs in this chapter.

Inflect in full the verb **statuo**.

Latīne scribe:

1. Caesar was informed that Dumnorix had led the Helvetians through the boundaries of the Sequanians. 2. He had done all these things without his order and also without the knowledge of the Aeduan. 3. Having learned these things, he determined to punish him because he thought there was sufficient cause. 4. The remarkable devotion and rectitude of his brother Divitiacus was opposing this. 5. Caesar feared that the punishment of Dumnorix would wound the feelings of his brother. 6. Divitiacus was called by him in order that he might speak with him concerning what the others had said. 7. Valerius, the interpreter, was not removed with the other interpreters. 8. Caesar had the highest confidence in Procillus in all things. 9. Divitiacus was forcibly admonished about (**de**) what was said about his brother when he himself was present (abl. abs.). 10. He said that in the conference in his presence (**apud se**) each one had spoken many things. 11. Caesar besought and urged Divitiacus, after examining the case (abl. abs.), either himself to decide or to order the state to decide.

CAPUT VICESIMUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

lacrima, -ae, tear.

complector, -plecti, -plexus sum (cum + plecto, *braid*), include, embrace.

obsecro (1) (ob + sacer, *sacred*), beseech (on sacred grounds), implore, beg.

scio, scīre, scīvi, scītus, know.

parvus, -a, -um, little, small (*comp. minor, sup. minimus*).

adulescentia, -ae, youth.

cresco, -ere, crevi, cretus, become great, grow, increase.

(**ops**), **opis, f.**, power, help; *in plu.* **opes**, wealth, resources, influence.

nervus, -i, sinew, muscle, nerve; *in plu.* strength, force, power.

minuo, -ere, -ui, -ūtus (minus), lessen, diminish, reduce.

perniciēs, -ēi (per + nex, death), ruin, destruction.

amor, -ōris (amo), m., love, affection.

fraternus, -a, -um (frater), brotherly, fraternal.

existimātio, -ōnis (ex + aestimo, compute), a judging, estimation, opinion.

vulgus, -i, n., *occasionally masc.*, common people, public, crowd, rabble.

fleo, flēre, flevi, fletus, weep.

dextra, -ae (dexter, right, sc. manus, hand), the right hand.

prendo vel prehendo, -ere, prendi, prensus, take hold of, grasp.

consōlor (1), console, comfort.

oro (1) (os, mouth), speak, plead, beseech, entreat.

tantus, -a, -um, so great, so large, such.

res publica, reipublicae (res + publica), the public matter; *hence* the state, commonwealth. Both parts of this compound are inflected; *cf. jusjurandum.*

condōno (1) (cum + dono), give up, forgive, pardon.

adhibeo (2) (ad + habeo), hold to, bring in, summon, use.

reprehendo, -ēre, -hendi, -hensus, hold back, criticise, blame.

moneo (2), advise, warn.

vito (1), avoid, shun.

praetereo. -īre, -īvi, -itus (praeter + eo), go beyond, pass, pass by.

custos, -custōdis, guard.

loquor, loqui, locūtus sum, speak.

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

Divitiacus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit, ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret: Scire se, illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se dolōris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adulescentiam posset, 5

per se crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam uterētur. Sese tamen et amōre fraterno et existimatiōne vulgi commovēri. Quod si quid ei a Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse
 10 eum locum amicitiae apud eum tenēret, neminem existimatūrum, non sua voluntāte factum; qua ex re futūrum, uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur. Haec cum pluribus verbis flens a Caesare peteret, Caesar ejus dextram prendit; consolātus rogat, finem orandi faciat; tanti ejus apud se
 15 gratiam esse ostendit, uti et reipublicae injuriam et suum dolōrem ejus voluntāti ac precibus condōnet. Dumnuorigem ad se vocat, fratrem adhibet; quae in eo reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitas querātur, propōnit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspiciōnes vitet;
 20 praeterita se Divitiaco fratri condonāre dicit. Dumnuorigi custōdes ponit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scire possit.

REM. In translating the indirect discourse in this chapter, name the forms that would be used in the direct discourse. Give the Latin name for each construction.

NOTES.

2. **Quid**: its meaning after **si**, **nisi**, **num**, or **ne**? XLIII. 7. **Gravius**: *adj.* or *adv.*? Remember that the comparative idea may be given by *more*, *rather*, *quite*, and often, as here, by *too*. **In**: *against*.

3. **Se**: subj. of **scire**. **Nec quemquam**: *and that no one*. **Ex eo**: *from that fact*, i. e. the conduct of Dumnuorig. **Plus . . . dolōris**: constr.? LI. 5. **Se**: i. e. **Divitiacum**, — **se**, the same construction as the corresponding pronoun **quemquam**. What would be the case with the **quam** omitted? LXI. 2.

4. **Capere**: why inf.? **Domi**: constr.? Cap. 18, 14. **Plurimum**: *sc. posset*.

5. **Minimum . . . posset**, *was by no means powerful*.

6. **Crevisset**: *sc. opibus ac nervis*. Verbs like **cresco**, formed by adding **-sco** to the verb stem (here **crea-**) are called *inceptives* or

inchoatives (**verba inchoatīva**), and denote the beginning of the action. A. 167, *a*; H. 337. **Opibus, nervis**: constr.? XXXIV. 3.

7. **Minuendam**: how distinguished from the gerund? **Uterētur**: why subj.?

8. **Fraterno**: observe the adj. ending **-nus**, meaning *belonging to, pertaining to*.

9. **Quod**: *now*, constr.? A. 240, *b*; H. 378, 2. LVIII. 1. **Quid**: cf. **ne quid**. **Accidisset**: for the future perfect indicative of the direct discourse, A. 286, Rem. *b*; H. 496, II. If the verb upon which this indirect discourse depends had been in a primary tense the perfect subj. would have been used. **Cum**, *while*: other meanings?

10. **Existimatūrum**: *sc. esse*. Has for its object **non factum** (**esse**), *that it was not done*.

11. **Voluntāte**: constr.? XXVIII. 1. **Futūrum (esse)**: *it would come to pass*. What form of the verb? XXV. 1. Form in *oratio recta*?

14. **Orandi**: form? **Faciat**: subj. of purpose with **ut** omitted, as is frequently the case after verbs of wishing, urging, etc. A. 331, *f. R*; H. 499, 2. **Tanti . . . ostendit**: *he shows that his good will is of so great value to him*. **Tanti** is a genitive of indefinite value. A. 252, *a*; H. 404, 405. App. 20, *f*.

16. **Voluntāti**: *for the sake of his wish*. Constr.? A. 235; H. 384, II. 1; App. 21, *h*. **Condōnet**: constr.? XLIX. 4.

17. **Reprehendat, intellegat**: why subj.? LII. 1.

19. **Vitet**: constr.?

20. **Praeterita**: *things passed by, the past*. **Fratrī**: *for (the sake of) his brother*. Cf. **voluntāti**.

Inflect the nouns in this chapter. Inflect each verb in its tense, and the verb **loquor** in full, noting again the forms in deponent verbs common to both voices. Go over the chapter asking and answering questions in Latin.

Latīne scribe :

1. Divitiacus embraced Caesar and besought him not to decide too severely. 2. Divitiacus said: I know these things are

true and no one on this account feels (**capio**) more sorrow than I do. 3. Dumnorix had grown in wealth and power although (**quamquam**) formerly he had very little influence. 4. He used this power for diminishing the popularity of his brother. 5. Brotherly affection and a respect for the public influenced Divitiacus to ask these things. 6. If anything shall have befallen him rather severe, the people will think it was done at my desire. 7. From this thing it will come to pass that all will turn away from me. 8. He said this because he was an intimate friend of Caesar. 9. While he was weeping Caesar grasped his hand and comforted him. 10. Having shed many tears, he made an end of beseeching. 11. He besought Caesar to pardon his brother. 12. His favor was of so much importance to Caesar that he forgave the wrong of the state at his desire. 13. When Divitiacus had been summoned (*abl. abs.*), he disclosed everything which he knew about his brother. 14. Caesar said to Dumnorix: I warn you in the future to avoid every suspicion: I will forgive the past for the sake of your brother. 15. Having placed guards, in order that he might know what he would do, he departed.

CAPUT VICESIMUM PRIMUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

consido, -ere, -sēdi, -sessus (**cum + sido, sit down**), settle, encamp.
octo, eight.

qualis, -e, interrogative adj., what sort, kind or nature.

circuitus, -us (**circum + eo**), a going round, circuit.

ascensus, -us (**ad + scando, climb**), a climbing up, ascent.

praetor -ōris (**prae + eo**), one who goes before; hence, in war, a general, commander; in civil affairs, a judge. The *praetor urbānus* decided the cases of Roman citizens. The *praetor peregrīnus* decided for strangers and between citizens and strangers.

ascendo, -ere, ascendi, ascensus (**ad + scando**), climb to, ascend.

perītus, -a, -um, experienced, skilled.

postea (**post + ea**), *adv.*, afterwards.

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

Eōdem die ab exploratoribus certior factus, hostes sub monte consedissee milia passuum ab ipsius castris octo, qualis esset natūra montis et qualis in circuitu ascensus, qui cognoscerent, misit. Renuntiātum est, facilem esse. De tertia vigilia Titum Labiēnum, legātum pro praetōre, cum duābus legionibus et eis ducibus, qui iter cognoverant, summum jugum montis ascendere jubet; quid sui consilii sit, ostendit. Ipse de quarta vigilia eōdem itinere, quo hostes ierant, ad eos contendit equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. P. Considius, qui rei militaris peritissimus habebātur et in exercitu L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus praemittitur.

NOTES.

1. **Sub monte** : *at the foot of the mountain.*

2. **Octo** : which of the numerals are declined? **Milia . . . octo** : the accusative is used to denote distance, or extent of space. A. 257; H. 379; App. 22, *d.*

3. **Qui . . . cognoscerent** : *to learn* = *ut ei . . . cognoscerent.* XL. 1.

4. **Misit** : *sc. exploratōres.* **De tertia vigilia** : i. e. just after midnight, **de** indicating that the watch had begun. LII. 3.

5. **Praetōre** : force of the ending **-tor**? LII. 2. **Legātum pro praetōre** : *a lieutenant with praetorian powers*, i. e. with his insignia and authority.

7. **Quid sui consilii sit**, *what his plan is* : lit. *what there is of his plan*, or *what belongs to his plan.*

10. **Rei** : constr.? Cap. 18, 8. **Qui . . . habebātur** : *who was considered (held) most highly skilled in military affairs.*

Inflect **certior, qualis, ascensus, praetōre, itinere.**

Both in reading and in translating give the names in full; thus Publius for P., Lucius for L., Marcus for M.

Latīne scribe :

1. The scouts informed Caesar that the enemy were eight miles away. 2. The Helvetians had encamped at the foot of the mountains. 3. Scouts were sent by Caesar to learn (*who should learn*) what was the nature of the ascent of the mountain. 4. The scouts reported that the ascent was very easy. 5. Titus Labienus, a lieutenant with praetorian powers, was ordered to ascend the summit (**summum jugum**) of this mountain. 6. The scouts, who had been sent in advance (**praemitto**), showed the way to Titus. 7. Caesar said to Titus: I will tell you what my plan is. 8. Having sent the cavalry in advance (*abl. abs.*) Caesar pushed on (**contendo**) by the same road. 9. He sent in advance Publius Considius, who had been considered rather skilful in military matters.

CAPUT VICESIMUM SECUNDUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

captīvus, -i (**capio**), a captive, prisoner.

comperio, -īre, -peri, -pertus (**cum** + *assumed form perio, try*), ascertain, discover, learn.

equus, -i, horse, *cf.* **eques**.

admitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missus (**ad** + **mitto**), send to, admit, allow, permit.

accurro, -ere, -cucurri vel -curri, -cursus (**ad** + **curro, run**), run or rush up to, hasten.

Gallicus, -a, -um (**Gallia**), Gallic.

insignis, -e (**in** + **signum**), marked upon, remarkable. *In neuter, as noun, mark, sign, decoration.*

collis, -is, m. hill.

subdūco, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus (**sub** + **duco**), lead from below, draw up, withdraw.

acies, -ēi (**acer**), a sharp edge, a sharp glance, battle line, battle; *cf.* **agmen, exercitus**.

instruo, -ere, -struxi, -structus (**in + struo, build**), build upon, construct, arrange, draw up.

praecipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus (**prae + capio**), take beforehand, instruct, direct, order.

impetus, -us (**in + peto**), assault, attack.

abstineo, -ēre, -tinui, -tentus (**ab + teneo**), hold away or off, refrain.

intervallum, -i (**inter + vallum, intrenchment**), distance between, interval.

sequor, sequi, secūtus sum, follow, pursue; *cf.* **consequor**.

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

Prima luce, quum summus mons a T. Labiēno tenerētur, ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captīvis comperit, aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēni cognitus esset, Considius equo admissō ad eum accurrit, dicit montem quem a Labiēno occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenēri; id se a Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognovisse. Caesar suas copias in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem instruit. Labiēnus, ut erat ei praeceptum a Caesare ne proelium committeret, nisi ipsīus copiae prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique uno tempore in hostes impetus fieret, monte occupāto nostros expectābat proelioque abstinēbat. Multo denique die per exploratōres Caesar cognōvit et montem a suis tenēri et Helvetios castra movisse et Considium timōre perterritum quod non vidisset pro viso sibi renuntiasse. Eo die, quo consuerat intervallo, hostes sequitur, et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra ponit.

NOTES.

1. **Summus mons**: *the top of the mountain*. Adjectives like **summus, medius**, etc. denoting order and succession are used in agreement with a noun to denote a part of a thing and not a particular thing. A. 193; H. 440, 2, N. 1.

3. **Passibus**: constr.? Cap. 18, 27. **Ut**: adv. or conj.?

4. **Equo admisso** : *at full speed.* Constr.?

6. **Occupāri** : why inf.? **Voluerit** : for **volēbas** or **voluisti** of the direct disc. Observe that pronouns of the first and second persons of the *oratio recta* are changed, usually, to the third person in *oratio obliqua*.

8. **Ut . . . praeceptum** : *as had been commanded him.* For impersonal use, A. 146, *d*; H. 301, 1.

9. **Committeret** : why subj.?

11. **Monte** : constr.?

12. **Exspectābat** : *was awaiting*, the imperfect of a continued act or state. **Multo . . . die** : *in broad day*, contrasted with **prima luce**.

15. **Vidisset** : constr.? **Pro viso** : *as seen.* **Sibi** : who is meant? **Renuntiasse** : uncontracted form?

16. **Intervallo**, which in thought precedes **quo**, is here attracted to the relative clause. A. 200, *b*; H. 445, 9. Constr.? Cap. 18, 27. **Milia** : constr.? 21, 2. How declined?

Inflect the verb **sequor**.

Explain the words in this chapter affected by the indirect discourse, naming the form they would have had in the direct discourse.

Latīne scribe :

1. At daybreak, Labienus, who was holding the top of the mountain, saw Considius rushing up to him at full speed. 2. The enemy's camp was not far from the camp of Labienus. 3. The arrival of Caesar and Labienus was not known by Considius. 4. Considius said : The mountain which you wished Labienus to seize is held by the enemy; I know this by the badges. 5. Caesar's troops were withdrawn by him to the nearest hill and the line of battle was formed. 6. Caesar said to Labienus : Do not engage in battle unless my troops are seen near the enemy's camp. 7. He wished an attack to be made upon the enemy on all sides at the same time. 8. Having seized the mountain he keeps the soldiers from battle for the present. 9. Late in the day (**multo die**) the scouts informed Caesar that his men were holding the mountain. 10. Considius, who was thoroughly frightened, reported to Caesar what he had not seen, as

if he had seen it (**pro viso**). 11. They were accustomed to follow the enemy at an interval of five or six miles (*vid. Cap. 15, ad finem*). 12. The Helvetians' camp was pitched (**pono**) several miles from the Roman camp.

CAPUT VICESIMUM TERTIUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

postridie (**postrēmo**, *after or following, + dies*), *adv.*, on the next or following day. *Cf. pridie et quotidie.*

biduum, -i (**bis**, *twice, + dies*), two days.

supersum, -esse, -fui (**super**, *above, + sum*), be above or over, remain, survive; *cf. praesum.*

Bibracte, -is, n., the capital of the Aedui, now Autun.

copiōsus, -a, -um (**copia**), plentiful, copious, wealthy.

prospicio, -spicere, -spexi, -spectus (**pro + spicio**, *look*), look forward, look out for.

decurio, -ōnis (**decem**), m., a commander of ten cavalry, a decurion.

fugitivus, -a, -um (**fugio**), fleeing, fugitive; *as noun*, a runaway (slave), deserter.

seu or sive (**si, if, + vel, or**), *conj.*, whether, either; **sive ... sive**, whether ... or, either ... or.

pridie (**prior**, *former, + dies*), *adv.*, the day before; *cf. postridie.*

interclūdo, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsus (**inter + claudo**, *shut or close*), shut off, cut off.

confīdo, -ere, -fīsus sum (**cum + fīdo**, *trust*), trust fully, believe, confide in.

commūto (**cum + muto**) (1), change completely, alter, change.

converto, -ere, -verti, -versus (**cum + verito**, *turn*), turn completely, turn about, reverse.

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

Postridie ejus diēi, quod omniūno biduum supererat quum exercitui frumentum metiri oportēret, et quod a Bibracte,

oppido Aeduōrum longe maximo et copiosissimo, non amplius milibus passuum XVIII. aberat, rei frumentariae prospiciendum existimāvit: iter ab Helvetiis avertit ac Bibracte
 5 ire contendit. Ea res per fugitīvos L. Aemilii, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nuntiātur. Helvetii, seu quod timōre perterritos Romānos discedere a se existimārent, eo magis quod pridie superioribus locis occupātis proelium non
 10 commisissent, sive eo quod re frumentaria interclūdi posse confiderent, commutāto consilio atque itinere converso nostros a novissimo agmine insēqui ac lacessere coepērunt.

NOTES.

1. The adv. **postridie** has here its original force as a noun, and is followed by the gen. **diēi**. A. 223, *e*; H. 398, 5, with footnotes.

3. **Copiosissimo**: force of the adjective-ending **-osus**?

4. XVIII.: **duodeviginti**, or **decem et octo**. Which of the numerals are declined? In reading the Latin always give the full form, and not the letters representing the numbers. **Prospiciendum**, *sc. esse*: why inf.? Formation and significance of the passive periphrastic? XLII. 4.

5. **Bibracte**, *to Bibracte*: the limit of motion is denoted by a noun in the accusative with **ad** or **in**; but names of towns omit the preposition. A. 258, *b*; H. 380, I. and II.; App. 22, *a*.

8. **Existimārent**: constr.? **Eo magis**: *on this account the more*.

10. **Commisissent**: constr.? XXXVIII. 5. **Re**: constr.? LIII. 3.

11. **Commutāto**: observe the force of **cum** in compound verbs. **Itinere converso**: *having reversed their course*; i. e. *having turned about*.

12. **Insequor**, **-sēqui**, **-secūtus sum** (*in, praep., + sequor, follow*), *follow up, pursue*.

Inflect together **res frumentaria**, **superior locus**, **novissimum agmen**.

Explain the construction of each of the infinitives in this chapter, and the subjunctives not mentioned in the notes.

Latīne scribe :

1. Caesar thought it was necessary to measure out grain to his (men) on the following day. 2. Bibracte, a large and wealthy town of the Aedui, was distant about (**ad**) eighteen miles. 3. Caesar turned away his line of march (**iter**) in order that he might look out for supplies. 4. The runaway slave reported to the Helvetians that Caesar was pushing on (**contendo**) to Bibracte. 5. I do not believe that the Romans were thoroughly overcome (**perterreo**) by fear. 6. The day before, the Romans did not engage in battle when they had seized the higher places (*abl. abs.*). 7. The Helvetians fully trusted that they could cut off the Romans from supplies. 8. Therefore (**itaque**) they completely changed their plan, and reversed their line of march. 9. Our men were harassed on the rear by the enemy. 10. I begin to understand (**intellego**) the plan of the Helvetians.

CAPUT VICESIMUM QUARTUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

postquam (**post** + **quam**), *conj.*, after that, after, as soon as, when.

adverto, -ere, -verti, -versus (**ad** + **verto**), turn to or towards.

sustineo, -ēre, -tinui, -tentus (**sub** + **teneo**, *hold*), hold from under, hold up, sustain.

medius, -a, -um, the middle of, mid.

triplex, **triplicis** (**ter** + **plico**, *fold*), triple, threefold.

veterānus, -a, -um (**vetus**, *old*), old, veteran; **veterāni**, -ōrum, veterans.

supra, *adv.*, and *praep. c. acc.*, above (in position), over (in number), before (in time).

compleo, -ēre, -plēvi, -plētus (**cum** + **pleo**, *fill*), fill up, complete.

sarcina, -ae, baggage, pack; **sarcinae**, the soldiers' individual baggage.

munio (4), fortify, protect, guard; *cf.* **munitio**.

impedimentum, -i (*in*, *praep.*, + **pes**, *foot*), a hindrance; *in plu.*, the heavy baggage (of the legion), the baggage train; *cf.* **sarcinae**.

confertus, -a, -um (**confercio**, *crowd together*), crowded together, compact, dense.

reicio, -ere, -jēci, -jectus (re + jacio, *throw*), throw back, drive back, repulse.

phalanx, **phalangis**, a phalanx. The phalanx (a Greek term) was a compact body of soldiers in rectangular form, holding their shields over their heads.

succēdo, -ere, -cessi, -cessus (sub + cedo, *go*), go under, go from under, come up, approach, succeed.

Derivativa Anglica nomina.

Postquam id animum advertit, copias suas Caesar in proximum collem subducit equitatumque, qui sustineret hostium impetum, misit. Ipse interim in colle medio triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quattuor veteranarum [ita uti supra] ;
 5 sed in summo jugo duas legiones, quas in Gallia citeriore proxime conscripserat, et omnia auxilia collocari ac totum montem hominibus compleri et interea sarcinas in unum locum conferri et eum ab his, qui in superiore acie constiterant, muniri jussit. Helvetii cum omnibus suis carris secuti
 10 impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt ; ipsi confertissima acie rejecto nostro equitatu phalange facta sub primam nostram aciem successerunt.

NOTES.

1. **Postquam . . . advertit** : *after Caesar turned his attention (animus) to this.* **Id** is the object of the preposition **ad** in **advertit**. A. 239, b ; H. 376.

2. **Qui sustineret** : *to sustain.* Constr. ?

3. **In colle medio** : *half way up the hill.* Cf. **summus mons**, Cap. 22, 1.

6. **Proxime** : *last.* Explain its formation from the adj.

8. **Eum** : *sc. locum.* **His** : why is **ab** necessary ? XLII. 2.

10. **Impedimenta** : composition ? Note the change of **n** to **m** before the labial **p**. Note the ending **-mentum**, commonly denoting the means of the action indicated by the verb ; e. g. **mone(u) + mentum**, *a means of admonishing (moneo)* ; **doce(u) + mentum**,

a means of teaching (*doceo*). **Contulērunt** (*confero*): name its principal parts and stems.

11. **Rejecto . . . equitātu**: constr.? **Sub**, *under*, which usually takes the ablative, is followed by the acc. with a verb of motion. Here it is best rendered *close to*. (Cf. in *c. abl. et c. acc.*)

Inflect each verb in the tense in which it is found. Inflect in full the verb **cado**.

Latīne scribe :

1. When Caesar had turned his attention (**animus**) to this, he thought his troops must be withdrawn. 2. The cavalry were sent by him to withstand the attack of the enemy. 3. When he had drawn up a triple line half way up the hill, he ordered two legions to be placed on the top. 4. Caesar enlisted these legions very recently (**proxime**) in hither Gaul. 5. He stationed all the auxiliaries so that the whole place would be filled with men. 6. The place where (**quo**) the packs were collected (**confero**) was fortified by the soldiers in the upper line. 7. All the wagons of the Helvetians, with their baggage, were collected in one place. 8. Our cavalry was driven back by them, and they advanced in a dense line to our rear.

CAPUT VICESIMUM QUINTUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

deinde (**de + inde**), *adv.*, thence, then, afterwards, next.

conspectus, **-us** (**conspicio**), sight.

aequo (1), equalize, make equal.

tollo, **-ere**, **sustuli**, **sublātus**, lift up, take away, remove, destroy.

cohortor (**cum + hortor**) (1), exhort earnestly, urge, encourage.

pilum, **-i**, javelin, pike. The pilum, the principal weapon of the legionary soldiers, was a square wooden shaft four feet long with a strong iron point. Its weight was a little over ten pounds.

perfringo, **-ere**, **-frēgi**, **-fractus** (**per + frango**, *break*), break through.

disjicio, **-ere**, **-jēcī**, **-jectus** (**dis + jacio**), hurl apart, disperse.

- gladius, -i, a pointed two-edged sword, about two and a half feet long.
- destringo, -ere, -strinxi, -strictus (de + stringo, *bind*), unbind, strip off, unsheath, draw.
- scutum, -i, *shield*. This was made of boards with a leather cover and metal rim, oblong, and nearly the height of the soldier.
- ictus, -us (ico, *strike*), stroke, thrust, blow.
- transfigo, -ere, -fixi, -fixus (trans + figo, *fix*), pierce through, transfix.
- colligo (1) (cum + ligo, *bind*), bind together.
- ferrum, -i, iron.
- inflecto, -ere, -flexi, -flexus (in + flecto, *bend, turn*), turn upon or back, bend.
- evello, -ere, -velli, -vulsus (e + vello, *pluck or pull*), pull out.
- sinister, -tra, -trum, on the left, left; sinistra, -ae, the left hand (*sc. manus, hand*); *cf. dextra*.
- impedio, -ire, -pedīvi, -pedītus (in + pes) hinder, obstruct, impede; *cf. impedimentum*.
- commode (commodus), conveniently, readily, easily.
- brachium, -i, the fore arm, the arm.
- praeopto (1) (prae + opto, *choose*), choose rather, prefer.
- manus, -us, f. hand; an armed force, band.
- emitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missus (e + mitto), send from or out, hurl, throw away.
- nudus, -a, -um, naked, bare, exposed, unprotected.
- corpus, corporis, body.
- tandem, *adv.*, at length, finally, (*in questions*) pray.
- vulnus, -eris, wound.
- defessus, -a, -um (*pf. part. of defetiscor, grow weary*), wearied, exhausted.
- pes, pedis, m. foot; pedem referre, to retreat.
- refero, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus (re + fero), bear or bring back, report.
- subsum, -esse, -fui (sub + sum), be near, be close at hand; *cf. adsum, praesum*.
- eo, *adv.*, to that place, thither.
- claudio, -ere, clausi, clausus, shut, close.
- latus, -eris, side, flank.
- apertus, -a, -um (*pf. part. of aperio, open*), open, exposed, unprotected.
- circumvenio, -īre, -vēni, -ventus (circum + venio, *come*), come around, surround, circumvent.
- conspicor (1) (cum + spicio, *look*), deservy, perceive, see.

redintegro (1) (**re + integro**, *make whole*), renew, revive.

signum, -i, standard, signal.

bipertīto or **bipartīto**, *adv.* (**bis**, *twice*, + **pars**), in two parts or divisions.

vinco, -ere, **vici**, **victus**, conquer, surpass, prevail.

summoveo or **submoveo**, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtus (**sub + moveo**), remove, dislodge.

resisto, -ere, **restiti** (**re + sisto**, *set*), set back, resist.

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

Caesar primum suo, deinde omnium ex conspectu remōtis equis, ut aequāto omnium periculo spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suos proelium commisit. Milites e loco superiōre pilis missis facile hostium phalangem perfregērunt. Ea disjecta gladiis destictis in eos impetum fecērunt. Gallis 5 magno ad pugnam erat impedimento, quod pluribus eōrum scutis uno ictu pilōrum transfixis et colligātis, cum ferrum se inflexisset, neque evellere neque sinistra impedita satis commode pugnāre poterant, multi ut diu jactāto brachio praeoptārent scutum manu emittere et nudo corpore pugnāre. 10 Tandem vulneribus defessi et pedem referre et, quod mons suberat circiter mille passuum, eo se recipere coepērunt. Capto monte et succedentibus nostris, Boii et Tulingi, qui hominum milibus circiter xv. agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimis praesidio erant, ex itinere nostros latere aperto 15 aggressi circumvenire; et id conspicāti Helvetii, qui in montem sese receperant, rursus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Romāni conversa signa bipertīto intulērunt: prima et secunda acies, ut victis ac submōtis resisteret, tertia, ut venientes sustinēret.

20

NOTES.

1. **Suo**: *sc. equo remoto*.

2. **Aequāto**: construe with **periculo**. **Tolleret**: constr.?

5. **Disjecta**: The prefix **dis-** or **di-**, meaning *apart* or *asunder*, is

used only in composition. **Gallis . . . impedimento** : *it was (for) a great hindrance to the Gauls in fighting.* Constr. ? Cap. 18, 28.

7. **Ferrum** : *iron*, here means the iron point of the **pilum**.

8. **Se** : reflexive; antecedent ? To what do the forms of **se** and **suus** regularly refer ? **Inflexisset** : constr. ? XLVI. 4. **Evellere**, **pugnāre** : constr. ? LIX. 3.

9. **Multi ut etc.** : *so that many preferred.* **Multi**, being emphatic, precedes **ut**, which usually stands first in its clause.

10. **Manu (manus)** : of what gender are most other nouns of the fourth declension ? **Corpore** : gender ? constr. ?

12. **Mille**, *a thousand* : here used as a noun. **Passuum** : constr. ? LI. 5.

13. **Capto . . . nostris** : render these absolute constructions by a temporal clause with verb in the pf.

15. **Novissimis praesidio** : cf. **Gallis impedimento**, *supra*.

18. **Signa** : There were many **signa** in the Roman army, including the eagle (**aquila**) and sometimes an outstretched hand, the goddess of victory, or a design of a wolf, dog, or serpent. In battle this was borne aloft on a pole by the **signifer**. As the **signa** were used to direct military movements, the word was frequently used idiomatically ; thus **signa convertere**, *to face about*. **Romāni . . . intulērunt** : *The Romans faced about and advanced in two divisions.*

19. **Resisteret** : constr. ?

20. **Tertia** : *sc. acies*. **Venientes** : render as a relative clause. A. 292 ; H. 549, 4, with examples.

Inflect together **capto monte**, **conversa signa**.

Give the construction of each noun in this chapter, noting particularly the frequent use of the abl. abs. and the ways in which it may be translated.

Latīne scribe :

1. The danger of all was made equal by Caesar, who removed his own (horse) and the horses of all the officers (**praeffecti militum**) out of sight. 2. He did this in order that the hope of flight might be taken away, and he encouraged his men to engage in battle. 3. By hurling javelins (*abl. abs.*) from their higher position, our

soldiers easily broke through the phalanx of the enemy. 4. The phalanx of the Helvetians was easily dispersed, and the Romans began to attack them with drawn swords. 5. It was a hindrance to the Helvetians that many of their shields were pierced through and fastened together by one thrust of the javelin. 6. The iron point (**ferrum**) of the javelin bent back so that it could not be pulled out of the shields. 7. The shields were carried (**fero**) with the left hand. 8. Caesar said that the Helvetians could not fight conveniently because the left hand was hindered. 9. Many of the enemy exerted (**jacto**) the arm in vain (**frustra**) for a long time and then (**deinde**) threw down their shields and fought with their bodies unprotected. 10. The Helvetians, exhausted with wounds, retreated to the mountain which was near. 11. When our men came up (*abl. abs.*) to the mountain, the Boii and Tulingi attempted to surround them. 12. About fifteen thousand men marched (**iter facio**) with them, in order that they might be a protection to the rear. 13. This was seen by the Helvetians, who again pressed on (**insto**) and renewed the battle. 14. The Romans faced about and advanced against them in two divisions. 15. The conquered and dislodged Gauls were resisted by the first and second lines.

CAPUT VICESIMUM SEXTUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

anceps, -cipitis (*ambo + caput*), two-headed, double, doubtful.

acriter (*acer, sharp*), sharply, vigorously.

vesper, -eri or -eris, m., evening.

vallum, -i (*vallus, a stake, palisade*), a rampart (set with stakes), wall, intrenchment.

objicio, -jicere, -jēci, -jectus (*ob + jacio*), throw in the way, put in front, expose, object.

telum, -i, a missile, dart. The **telum** was for fighting at a distance; *cf. pilum*.

conjicio *or* **conicio**, -ere, -jeci, -jectus (**cum** + **jacio**), hurl together, hurl with force.

rota, -ae, wheel.

matarā, -ae (*a Celtic word*), Gallic javelin *or* pike.

tragula, -ae (**traho**), a Gallic lance, javelin. This was attached to a strap, by which it was swung and thrown.

subjicio, -ere, -jēci, -jectus (**sub** + **jacio**), throw from beneath, throw below, subdue, subject.

vulnero (1) (**vulnus**), to wound, injure.

filius, -i, son; *cf.* **filia**.

nox, **noctis**, night.

intermitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missus (**inter** + **mitto**), send between *or* among, leave off, cease, interrupt, intermit.

sepultūra, -ae (**sepelio**, *bury*), a burial.

triduum, -i (**tres** + **dies**), three days; *cf.* **biduum**.

moror (1), delay, tarry.

juvo, -āre, **juvi**, **jutus**, aid, assist.

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

Ita ancipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnātum est. Diutius quum sustinēre nostrōrum impetus non possent, alteri se ut coeperant in montem recepērunt, alteri ad impedimenta et carros suos se contulērunt: nam hoc toto proelio, cum
 5 ab hora septima ad vesperum pugnātum sit, aversum hostem vidēre nemo potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnātum est, propterea quod pro vallo carros objecerant et e loco superiōre in nostros venientes tela conjiciēbant, et nonnulli inter carros rotasque mataras ac tragulas sub-
 10 jiciēbant nostrosque vulnerābant. Diu cum esset pugnātum, impedimentis castrisque nostri potīti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus e filiis captus est. Ex eo proelio circiter hominum milia cxxx. superfuērunt eāque tota nocte continenter iērunt: nullam partem noctis itinere intermisso
 15 in fines Lingonum die quarto pervenērunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepultūram occisōrum nostri

triduum morāti eos sequi non potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas literas nuntiosque misit ne eos frumento neve alia re juvārent; qui si juvissent, se eōdem loco quo Helvetios habitūrum. Ipse triduo intermisso cum omniibus copiis eos 20 sequi coepit.

NOTES.

1. **Pugnatum est**: render by the personal construction, *they fought*. A. 146, *d*; H. 301, 1.

2. **Possent**: constr.? **Alteri . . . alteri**: *the one party (the Helvetians) . . . the other party (the Boii and Tulingi)*.

3. **Ut**: how rendered with the indicative?

4. **Proelio**: constr.? **Cum . . . pugnatum sit**: *although they fought*. **Cum** is followed by the subjunctive when it denotes time (*when*) with the added notion of concession (*though*). A. 313, *d*; H. 515, III.; App. 26, II. 4, also 5, Rem.

5. **Septima hora**: at what time did the Roman day begin? **Aversum hostem**: *an enemy turned away = the back of an enemy*.

6. **Ad multam noctem**: *till late at night*. Cf. **prima luce** and **multo die**, Cap. 22.

7. **Pro vallo**: *as an intrenchment*. The **vallum** was commonly of earth, several feet high, and wide enough for the soldiers to stand on behind the palisades. Outside of it was a ditch (**fossa**) from nine to twelve feet wide.

9. **Subjiciēbant**: the Gauls discharged their weapons from below, i. e. through the spokes of the wheels.

10. **Esset pugnātum**: cf. **pugnātum est**, *supra*. Why subj.?

11. **Impedimentis, castris**: constr.? Cf. XXXIV. 3.

12. **Filiis**: *sous*. **Filia**, *daughter*, has the dat. and abl. pl. ending in **-abus**. A. 36, *e*; H. 49, 4. **E filiis**: what other construction might have been used?

13. **CXXX.**: **centum et triginta**. **Ea tota nocte**: would **eam totem noctem** do as well?

14. **Partem**: constr.? **Noctis**: constr.?

16. **Sepultūram** : formed from the perf. part. stem (**sepult-**) of **sepelio** + the significant ending **-ura** denoting the *thing done, the result of the act* ; English **-ure**. Cf. **pingo**, **pict-ūra**, *picture* ; **aperio**, **apert-ūra**, *aperture*.

17. **Triduum** : constr. ? Cf. **partem**. **Potuisset** : constr. ? **Lingonas** : Greek ending for **Lingones**. A. 64 ; H. 68.

18. **Frumento, re** : constr. ?

19. **Juvārent** : what two explanations of this subjunctive are possible ? **Juvissent** : fut. pf. in *oratio recta*, Cap. 20, 9. **Se habitūrum** (*esse eos*), **eōdem loco, quo Helvetios** (*haberet*) : *he would consider them (in the same position) as he considered the Helvetians*.

Inflect together **hoc proelio, multam noctem, nullam partem, die quarto, alia re, eōdem loco**. Inflect in full the verb **mitto**.

Latīne scribe :

1. The Helvetians for a long time fought a doubtful battle. 2. Some of the enemy began to retreat to the mountain ; others were gathering (**confero**) at their wagons because they thought they could not withstand the attack of our soldiers. 3. They fought from the seventh hour far into the night about the baggage. 4. A retreating (**aversus**) enemy was seen by no one, although the battle lasted until evening. 5. When they hurled javelins against our men, who were advancing, they wounded some. 6. Pikes and darts were hurled from below, between the wheels of the wagons. 7. They fought several hours before (**prius quam**) the Romans obtained possession of the Gauls' camp. 8. They captured Orgetorix's son and daughter, who were in the camp. 9. Many thousands of Helvetians who survived this battle set out on the march, and after (**post**) three days arrived (having set out, arrived) in the boundaries of the **Lingones**. 10. The Romans could not pursue them on the same night, because many of the soldiers were wounded. 11. Caesar said to the **Lingones** : " Do not aid the Helvetians with grain or anything. If you shall have aided them, I shall consider you in the same position in which I consider the Helvetians."

CAPUT VICESIMUM SEPTIMUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

inopia, -ae (*in*, *neg.*, + *ops*, *help*), want, scarcity.

editio, -ōnis (*dedo*, *give up*), a giving up, surrender.

projicio, -ere, -jēci, -jectus (*pro* + *jacio*), throw before *or* away, cast ;
cf. the compounds of *jacio*.

suppliciter (**supplex**), suppliantly, humbly.

tum, *adv.*, then.

pareo (2), obey.

perfugio, -ere, -fūgi, -fugitus (*per* + *fugio*), flee, desert.

posco, -ere, -poposci, ask for urgently, demand ; *cf.* **precor**.

conquiro, -ere, -quisivi, -quisitus (*cum* + *quaeso*, *seek*), seek earnestly, search for.

salus, **salūtis**, safety ; *cf.* **salveo**, *be well*.

editicius, -i (*dedo*, *give up*), one who has surrendered, a captive.

occulto (1), conceal, hide.

ignōro (1) (*in*, *neg.*, + [*g*] **nosco**, *know*), not to know, be ignorant, disregard, ignore.

egredior, -gredi, -gressus (*e* + *gradior*, *step, go*), go forth *or* out, depart ; *cf.* **aggredior**.

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

Helvetii omnium rerum inopia adducti legātos de deditiōne ad eum misērunt. Qui cum eum in itinere convenissent seque ad pedes projecissent suppliciterque locūtī flentes pacem petissent, atque eos in eo loco quo tum essent suum adventum exspectāre jussisset, parūērunt. Eo postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsides, arma, servos qui ad eos perfugissent poposcit. Dum ea conquiruntur et conferuntur, nocte intermissa circiter hominum milia VI. ejus pagi, qui Verbigēnus appellātur, sive timōre perterriti ne armis traditis supplicio afficerentur, sive spe salūtis inducti quod in tanta multitudine dediticiorum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīno ignorārī posse existimārent, prima nocte e castris Helvetiōrum egressi ad Rhenum finesque Germanōrum contendērunt.

NOTES.

2. **Qui cum**: *and when they*. Observe that the relative pronoun is here equal to a conjunction and a demonstrative. A. 180, *f.*; H. 453.

4. **Essent**: subj. because depending upon another subj. clause and considered as a part of it. A. 342; H. 529, 11; App. 26, II. 7.

6. **Perfugissent**: why subj.? LXII. 2.

7. **Ea**, referring to **obsides, arma, servos**, might have been masc. A. 187, *b.*; H. 439, 2, N.

8. **Hominum**: constr.?

9-10. **Perterriti, inducti** (masc.) are construed with **milia** (neut.). This is a construction according to the sense (*constructio ad sensum*). A. 187, *d.*; H. 438, 6. **Timōre perterriti ne**: *thoroughly overcome by the fear that*. When is **ne** rendered *that*? Cap. 19, 11. **Afficerentur**: constr.?

12. **Existimārent**: constr.?

Inflect the verb **posco**, noting that one of its stems is wanting.

Note carefully the composition of compound words, and give all the English derivatives that can be suggested.

Latīne scribe :

1. Ambassadors were sent to Caesar by the Helvetians concerning a surrender, because they were in want. 2. The ambassadors met Caesar on the way and cast (having met, cast) themselves at his feet, that they might humbly beg for peace. 3. Caesar said that the Helvetians must remain where they then were, and await his arrival. 4. The Helvetians obeyed Caesar because they feared him. 5. When Caesar had come to them, he demanded all the slaves who had deserted to them. 6. The Helvetians hunted up and brought to Caesar those things which he had demanded. 7. Several (**nonnullus**) thousands of men who were overcome (**perterritus**) by fear that they would suffer punishment if they gave up their arms, departed from the camp in the early part of the night. 8. These men thought that their flight would be easily concealed or entirely overlooked. 9. Caesar was not ignorant that these men had gone.

CAPUT VICESIMUM OCTAVUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

rescisco, -ere, -scīvi or -scīi, -scītus (re + **scisco**, *inquire*), ascertain, find out.

redūco, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus (re + **duco**), lead *or* bring back.

purgo (1), free from blame, clear, purge.

perfuga, -ae (**perfugio**), runaway, deserter.

unde, *adv.*, from which place, whence.

fructus, -us (**fruor**, *enjoy*), what one enjoys, fruit, income, crops.

amitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missus (a + **mitto**), send away, lose.

nihil, *indecl. noun*, nothing.

fames, -is, hunger, famine.

tolero (1), bear, endure, support, maintain, tolerate.

ratio, -ōnis (**reor**, *reckon*), a reckoning, account, reason, method, plan.

vaco (1), be unoccupied, be empty *or* vacant.

bonitas, -tātis, goodness, fertility.

par, paris, equal, like, similar.

libertas, -tātis (**liber**, *free*), freedom, independence, liberty.

condicio, -ōnis (**cum** + **dico**), agreement, compact, condition, terms.

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quorum per fines ierant, his, uti conquirent et reducerent, si sibi purgāti esse vellent, imperāvit; reductos in hostium numero habuit; reliquos omnes obsidibus, armis, perfugis traditis in deditiōnem accepit. Helvetios, Tulingos, Latobrigos in fines suos, unde erant profecti, reverti iussit; et quod omnibus fructibus amissis domi nihil erat, quo famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut eis frumenti copiam facerent: ipsos oppida vicosque, quos incenderant, restituere iussit. Id ea maxime ratiōne fecit, quod noluit, eum locum, unde Helvetii discesserant, vacāre, ne propter bonitatem agrōrum Germāni, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, e suis finibus in Helvetiōrum fines trans-

irent et finitimi Galliae provinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boios, petentibus Aeduis, quod egregia virtute erant cogniti,
 15 ut in finibus suis collocarent, concessit; quibus illi agros dedērunt quosque postea in parem juris libertātisque condi-
 cionem atque ipsi erant, recepērunt.

NOTES.

1. **Quod**: render as a demonstrative. *Cf.* note on **qui cum**. Cap. 27, 2. The clause **quōrum . . . ierant** has for its antecedent **his**, the object of **imperāvit**. **Uti**: old form for **ut**, from the still older form **utei**.

2. **Conquirerent, reducerent**: constr.? **Si . . . vellent**: *if they wished to be blameless in his sight*. **Sibi**: is in the dative showing the person in reference to whom the statement is made. Such a dative is called the *Dative of Reference* (Dativus Relationis). A. 235; H. 384, 4, N. 3; App. 21, *h*. The perfect part. **purgāti** is here used as an adj. **Vellent**: form in *oratio recta*?

3. **Reductos**: *sc. eos*. **In . . . numero**: i. e. he put them to death.

4. **Perfugis**: observe again the different ways of rendering the abl. abs.

7. **Domi**: locative. **Quo . . . tolerarent** = **ut eo . . . tolerarent**, hence, subj. of purpose.

9. **Ea . . . ratione**: *for this reason*.

11. **Vacāre**: why inf.?

12. **Suis**: *Germāni*. **Ne . . . transirent**: constr.?

13. **Provinciae**: constr.? LVII. 4.

14-15. **Boios . . . concessit**: English order, **concessit Aeduis petentibus, ut collocarent Boios in suis finibus, quod cogniti erant (esse) egregia virtute (qf eminent valor)**; **ut . . . collocarent** is the direct obj. and **Aeduis** the indirect obj. of **concessit**.

16. **Parem . . . atque . . . erant**: *equal to what they themselves were in*. **Atque** is used with the sense of *as* or *than* with words of likeness and comparison. A. 156, *a*; H. 554, 1, 2, N.

The origin of this use of **atque** may be shown thus : *Tu es in pari servitutis condicione atque ego* (Latin idiom). *Ego atque tu in pari servitutis condiciōne sumus* (Eng. idiom).

Inflect together **fructibus amissis, ea ratiōne, suis finibus, petentibus Aeduis, parem condiciōnem** ; beginning of course with the nom. sing. Inflect in full the verb **jussit**.

Question in Latin for constructions and the facts discussed in this chapter.

Latīne scribe :

1. Caesar ascertained that the deserters had gone through the boundaries of the neighboring peoples. 2. Caesar said : "Search them out and bring them back if you wish to be blameless in my sight." 3. He commanded that they should be treated as (held in the number of) enemies. 4. All the rest were received in capitulation after they had given up (*abl. abs.*) the deserters and hostages. 5. The Helvetians and other tribes (**populus**) had set out from their own boundaries. 6. When Caesar ordered them to return, they did so, although there were no crops at home by which they might endure famine. 7. Caesar commanded the Allobroges : "Furnish (**facio**) the Helvetians with a supply of grain." 8. They themselves, having burned their towns and villages, were ordered by Caesar to restore them. 9. He was doing these things especially for this reason, because he was unwilling that the Germans should dwell in the Helvetians' territory. 10. He did not wish the Germans to be neighbors to the friends of Rome. 11. They asked Caesar to permit them (**ut sibi liceat**) to place (**ut c. subj.**) the Boii in their territory because they knew them to be of eminent valor (*abl. characteristic*). 12. The Boii received fields from the Aeduans, and afterward equal terms of rights and independence.

CAPUT VICESIMUM NONUM.

VOCABULARIUM.

tabula, ae, board, writing-tablet, list.

litera *vel* littera, -ae, a letter of the alphabet.

Graecus, -a, -um, Grecian, Greek; **Graeci**, the Greeks.

nominātīm (**nomen**), by name.

ratio, -ōnis, reckoning, computation.

separātīm (**separo**, *separate*), separately, apart.

puer, pueri, child, boy.

senex, senis, an old man.

mulier, mulieris, woman.

summa, -ae (**summus**), sum total, whole amount, chief point, control.

caput, capitīs, n., the head, person.

redeo, -īre, -īvi, *or* -ii, -itus (**re** + **eo**, *go*), go back, return.

census, -us (**censeo**, *estimate*), an estimation *or* numbering, count, census.

Derivatīva Anglica nomina.

In castris Helvetiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecis confectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulis nominātīm ratio confecta erat, qui numerus domo exisset eōrum, qui arma ferre possent, et item separātīm pueri, senes, mulieresque. Quarum omnium rerum summa erat capitum Helvetiōrum milia cclxiii., Tulingōrum milia xxxvi., Lato-
 5 brigōrum xiv., Rauricōrum xxiii., Boiōrum xxxii.; ex his, qui arma ferre possent, ad milia nonaginta duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad milia ccclxviii. Eōrum, qui domum
 10 rediērunt, censu habito, ut Caesar imperaverat, repertus est numerus milium c et x.

NOTES.

2. **Quibus in tabulis**, and in these lists: for use of relative *cf.* Cap. 27, 2. Small thin boards, covered with wax, were written upon

by a pointed iron instrument called the **stilus**. Often these were fastened together with a hinge, opening like the leaves of a book.

3. **Exisset**: constr.? LII. 1.

4. **Possent**: constr.? LXII. 2. **Pueri, senes, mulieres**: *sc.* some verb implied by **nominātim**, such as **nomināti sunt**.

5. **Capitum**, *souls*, not *head* as of cattle: *part. gen.* limiting **milia**.

6-9. CCLXIII., **ducenta sexaginta tria**; XXXVI., **triginta sex**; XIV., **quattuor decem**; XXIII., **viginti tria**; XXXII., **triginta duo**; XCII., **nonaginta duo**; CCCLXVIII., **trecenta sexaginta octo**.

10. **Rediērunt** (**redeo**) the indicative of fact or certainty instead of subj. of characteristic and result. The **d** used in the composition of this word is euphonic, to prevent the concurrence of vowels.

11. **c et x.**: **centum et decem**.

Read over the sketch of this eventful campaign at the beginning of this book.

Latīne scribe :

1. The lists, which were brought to Caesar, were written in Greek characters. 2. The number of those who had gone from home was written by name. 3. The names of the soldiers who could bear arms were not on the same lists with those of the women and children. 4. Caesar states (**dico**) that three hundred and sixty-eight thousands of these had left their homes, and that ninety-two thousands could bear arms. 5. Caesar ordered his men to find out how great a number of them returned to their homes. 6. They reported that the number was one hundred and ten thousand. 7. More than (**plus quam**) two hundred thousand souls (**capita**) were lost in this war.

DE BELLO GALLICO.

LIBER PRIMUS.

Capita 1-29.

GALLIA est omnis divisa in partes tres, quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur. Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit. Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate provinciae longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatores saepe commeant, atque ea quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent important; proximique sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt: qua de causa Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, quod fere quotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt. Eorum una pars, quam Gallos obtinere dictum est, initium capit a flumine Rhodano; continetur Garumna flumine, Oceano, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; vergit ad septentriones. Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni; spectant in septentriones et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenaeos montes et eam partem Oceani quae est ad Hispaniam pertinet; spectat inter occasum solis et septentriones.

2. Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix. Is M. Messala et M. Pisone Coss. regni cupiditate inductus conjurationem nobilitatis fecit, et civitati persuasit ut de finibus suis

cum omnibus copiis exirent; perfacile esse, cum virtute omnibus praestarent, totius Galliae imperio potiri. Id hoc facilius eis persuasit quod undique loci natura Helvetii continentur: una ex parte flumine Rheno, latissimo atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit; altera ex parte monte Jura altissimo, qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertia lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano, qui provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit. His rebus fiebat ut et minus late vagarentur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; quae ex re homines bellandi cupidi magno dolore afficiebantur. Pro multitudine autem hominum et pro gloria belli atque fortitudinis angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur, qui in longitudinem milia passuum CCXL, in latitudinem CLXXX patebant.

3. His rebus adducti et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti constituerunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinerent comparare, jumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum coëmere, sementes quam maximas facere ut in itinere copia frumenti suppeteret, cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare. Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt: in tertium annum profectionem lege confirmant. Ad eas res conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur. Is sibi legationem ad civitates suscepit. In eo itinere persuadet Castico, Catamantaloeidis filio, Sequano, cujus pater regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat et a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus erat, ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigi Aeduo, fratri Divitiaci, qui eo tempore principatum in civitate obtinebat ac maxime plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conaretur persuadet, eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat. Perfacile factu esse illis probat conata perficere, propterea quod ipse suae civitatis imperium obtenturus esset; non esse dubium quin totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii possent; se suis copiis suoque exercitu illis regna conciliatorum confirmat. Hac oratione adducti inter se fidem et jusjurandum dant, et regno occupato per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos totius Galliae sese potiri posse sperant.

4. Ea res est Helvetiis per indicium enuntiata. Moribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coëgerunt: damnatum poenam sequi oportebat ut igni cremaretur. Die constituta causae dictionis

Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam ad hominum milia decem undique coëgit, et omnes clientes obaeratosque suos, quorum magnum numerum habebat, eodem conduxit: per eos ne causam diceret se eripuit. Cum civitas ob eam rem incitata armis jus suum exsequi conaretur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistratus cogerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit.

5. Post ejus mortem nihilo minus Helvetii id quod constituerant facere conantur, ut e finibus suis exeant. Ubi jam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua omnia numero ad duodecim, vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privata aedificia incendunt, frumentum omne, praeter [quam] quod secum portaturi erant, comburunt, ut, domum reditionis spe sublata, paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent; trium mensium molita cibaria sibi quemque domo efferre jubent. Persuadent Rauracis et Tulingis et Latobrigis finitimis uti eodem usu consilio oppidis suis vicisque exustis una cum iis proficiscantur; Boiosque, qui trans Rhenum incoluerant et in agrum Noricum transierant Noreiamque oppugnarant, receptos ad se socios sibi adsciscunt.

6. Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent: unum per Sequanos angustum et difficile, inter montem Juram et flumen Rhodanum, vix qua singuli carri ducerentur; mons autem altissimus impendebat ut facile perpauci prohibere possent: alterum per provinciam nostram multo facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod inter fines Helvetiorum et Allobrogum, qui nuper pacati erant, Rhodanus fluit isque nonnullis locis vado transitur. Extremum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvetiorum finibus Genava. Ex eo oppido pons ad Helvetios pertinet. Allobrogibus sese vel persuasuros, quod nondum bono animo in populum Romanum viderentur, existimabant, vel vi coacturos ut per suos fines eos ire paterentur. Omnibus rebus ad profectionem comparatis, diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam Rhodani omnes conveniant: is dies erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr. L. Pisone A. Gabinio consulibus.

7. Caesari cum id nuntiatum esset, eos per provinciam nostram iter facere conari, maturat ab urbe proficisci et quam maximis potest

itineribus in Galliam ulteriorem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Provinciae toti quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat : erat omnino in Gallia ulteriore legio una : pontem qui erat ad Genuam jubet rescindi. Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt, nobilissimos civitatis, cujus legationis Nammicus et Verudoctius principem locum obtinebant, qui dicerent, Sibi esse in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter haberent nullum ; rogare ut ejus voluntate id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoria tenebat L. Cassium consulem occisum exercitumque ejus ab Helvetiis pulsum et sub jugum missum, concedendum non putabat, neque homines inimico animo, data facultate per provinciam itineris faciundi, temperaturos ab injuria et maleficio existimabat : tamen, ut spatium intercedere posset, dum milites quos imperaverat convenirent, legatis respondit Diem se ad deliberandum sumpturum ; si quid vellent, ad Idus April. reverterentur.

8. Interea ea legione, quam secum habebat, militibusque qui ex provincia convenerant, a lacu Lemanno, qui in flumen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Juram, qui fines Sequanorum ab Helvetiis dividit, milia passuum decem novem murum in altitudinem pedum sedecim fossamque perducit. Eo opere perfecto, praesidia disponit, castella communit, quo facilius, si se invito transire conarentur, prohibere possit. Ubi ea dies quam constituerat cum legatis venit, et legati ad eum reverterunt, negat se more et exemplo populi Romani posse iter ulli per provinciam dare, et si vim facere conentur, prohibitorum ostendit. Helvetii, ea spe dejecti, navibus junctis ratibusque compluribus factis, alii vadis Rhodani, qua minima altitudo fluminis erat, nonnunquam interdiu, saepius noctu, si perrumpere possent conati, operis munitione et militum concursu et telis repulsi, hoc conatu destiterunt.

9. Relinquebatur una per Sequanos via, qua, Sequanis invitis, propter angustias ire non poterant. His cum sua sponte persuadere non possent, legatos ad Dumnorigem Aeduum mittunt ut eo deprecatore a Sequanis impetrarent. Dumnorix gratia et largitione apud Sequanos plurimum poterat, et Helvetiis erat amicus, quod ex ea civitate Orgetorigis filiam in matrimonium duxerat, et cupiditate

regni adductus novis rebus studebat, et quam plurimas civitates suo sibi beneficio habere obstrictas volebat. Itaque rem suscipit, et a Sequanis impetrat ut per fines suos Helvetios ire patiantur, obsidesque uti inter sese dent perficit : Sequani, ne itinere Helvetios prohibeant ; Helvetii, ut sine maleficio et injuria transeant.

10. Caesari renuntiatur Helvetiis esse in animo per agrum Sequanorum et Aeduorum iter in Santonum fines facere, qui non longe a Tolosatium finibus absunt, quae civitas est in provincia. Id si fieret, intelligebat magno cum periculo provinciae futurum ut homines bellicosos, populi Romani inimicos, locis patentibus maximeque frumentariis finitimos haberet. Ob eas causas ei munitioni quam fecerat T. Labienum legatum praefecit ; ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit duasque ibi legiones conscribit, et tres quae circum Aquileiam hiemabant ex hibernis educit, et qua proximum iter in ulteriorem Galliam per Alpes erat cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit. Ibi Centrones et Graioceli et Caturiges, locis superioribus occupatis, itinere exercitum prohibere conantur. Compluribus his proeliis pulsus, ab Occlo, quod est citerioris provinciae extremum, in fines Voconiorum ulterioris provinciae die septimo pervenit, inde in Allobrogum fines, ab Allobrogibus in Segusianos exercitum ducit. Hi sunt extra provinciam trans Rhodanum primi.

11. Helvetii jam per angustias et fines Sequanorum suas copias transduxerant, et in Aeduorum fines pervenerant eorumque agros populabantur. Aedui, cum se suaque ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium : Ita se omni tempore de populo Romano meritos esse ut paene in conspectu exercitus nostri agri vastari, liberi eorum in servitutem abduci, oppida expugnari non debuerint. Eodem tempore Aedui Ambarri, necessarii et consanguinei Aeduorum, Caesarem certiores faciunt sese, depopulatis agris, non facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibere. Item Allobroges, qui trans Rhodanum vicos possessionesque habebant, fuga se ad Caesarem recipiunt, et demonstrant sibi praeter agri solum nihil esse reliqui. Quibus rebus adductus, Caesar non exspectandum sibi statuit, dum, omnibus fortunis sociorum consumptis, in Santonos Helvetii pervenirent.

12. Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Aeduarum et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit incredibili lenitate, ita ut oculis in utram partem fluat judicari non possit. Id Helvetii ratibus ac lintribus junctis transibant. Ubi per exploratores Caesar certior factus est tres jam partes copiarum Helvetios id flumen transduxisse, quartam vero partem citra flumen Ararim reliquam esse, de tertia vigilia cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus ad eam partem pervenit quae nondum flumen transierat. Eos impeditos et inopinantes adgressus magnam partem eorum concidit: reliqui sese fugae mandarunt atque in proximas silvas abdiderunt. Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus; nam omnis civitas Helvetia in quattuor pagos divisa est. Hic pagus unus, cum domo exisset, patrum nostrorum memoria L. Cassium consulem interfecerat et ejus exercitum sub jugum miserat. Ita sive casu, sive consilio deorum immortalium, quae pars civitatis Helvetiae insignem calamitatem populo Romano intulerat, ea princeps poenas persolvit. Qua in re Caesar non solum publicas sed etiam privatas injurias ultus est, quod ejus soceri L. Pisonis avum, L. Pisonem legatum, Tigurini eodem proelio quo Cassium interfecerant.

13. Hoc proelio facto, reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut consequi posset, pontem in Arare faciendum curat, atque ita exercitum transducit. Helvetii repentino ejus adventu commoti, cum id quod ipsi diebus viginti aegerrime confecerant, ut flumen transirent, illum uno die fecisse intelligerent, legatos ad eum mittunt, cujus legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare egit: Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi eos Caesar constituisset atque esse voluisset: sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improvise unum pagum adortus esset, cum hi qui flumen transissent suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suae magno opere virtuti tribueret aut ipsos despiceret: se ita a patribus majoribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtute quam dolo contenderent aut insidiis niterentur. Quare ne committeret ut is locus, ubi constitissent, ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen caperet, aut memoriam proderet.

14. His Caesar ita respondit: Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res quas legati Helvetii commemorassent, memoria teneret, atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito populi Romani accidissent, qui si alicujus injuriae sibi conscius fuisset, non fuisse difficile cavere; sed eo deceptum quod neque commissum a se intelligeret quare timeret, neque sine causa timendum putaret. Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium injuriarum, quod eo invito iter per provinciam per vim tentassent, quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexassent, memoriam deponere posse? Quod sua victoria tam insolenter gloriarentur, quodque tam diu se impune injurias tulisse admirarentur, eodem pertinere. Consuesse enim deos immortales, quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci velint, his secundiores interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, si obsides ab iis sibi dentur uti ea quae polliceantur facturos intelligat, et si Aeduis de injuriis quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sese cum iis pacem esse facturum. Divico respondit: Ita Helvetios a majoribus suis institutos esse uti obsides accipere non dare consuerint: ejus rei populum Romanum esse testem. Hoc responso dato discessit..

15. Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Caesar equitatumque omnem ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omni provincia et Aeduis atque eorum sociis coactum habebat, praemittit, qui videant quas in partes hostes iter faciant. Qui cupidius novissimum agmen insecuti, alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum proelium committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo proelio sublatis Helvetiis, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulerant, audacius subsistere nonnunquam et novissimo agmine proelio nostros lacessere coeperunt. Caesar suos a proelio continebat, ac satis habebat in praesentia hostem rapinis, pabulationibus, populationibusque prohibere. Ita dies circiter quindecim iter fecerunt, uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum non amplius quinis aut senis milibus passuum interesset.

16. Interim quotidie Caesar Aeduos frumentum, quod essent publice polliciti, flagitare. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia sub septen-

trionibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, non modo frumenta in agris matura non erant, sed ne pabuli quidem satis magna copia suppetebat: eo autem frumento, quod flumine Arare navibus subvexerat, propterea uti minus poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvetii averterant, a quibus discedere nolebat. Diem ex die ducere Aedui; conferri, comportari, adesse dicere. Ubi se diutius duci intellexit et diem instare, quo die frumentum militibus metiri oporteret, convocatis eorum principibus, quorum magnam copiam in castris habebat, in his Divitiaco et Lisco, qui summo magistratui praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Aedui, qui creatur annuus et vitae necisque in suos habet potestatem, graviter eos accusat, quod, cum neque emi neque ex agris sumi posset, tam necessario tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab iis non sublevetur; praesertim cum magna ex parte eorum precibus adductus bellum susceperit, multo etiam gravius quod sit destitutus queritur.

17. Tum demum Liscus oratione Caesaris adductus quod antea tacuerat proponit: Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat, qui privatim plus possint quam ipsi magistratus. Hos seditiosa atque improba oratione multitudinem detertere, ne frumentum conferant, quod praestare debeant; si jam principatum Galliae obtinere non possent, Gallorum quam Romanorum imperia perferre; neque dubitare debeant quin, si Helvetios superaverint Romani, una cum reliqua Gallia Aeduis libertatem sint erepturi. Ab eisdem nostra consilia, quaeque in castris gerantur, hostibus enuntiari: hos a se coerceri non posse. Quin etiam, quod necessario rem coactus Caesari enuntiarit, intelligere sese quanto id cum periculo fecerit, et ob eam causam, quam diu potuerit, tacuisse.

18. Caesar hac oratione Lisci Dumnorigem, Divitiaci fratrem, designari sentiebat, sed quod pluribus praesentibus eas res jactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet: quaerit ex solo ea quae in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacius. Eadem secreto ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vera: Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summa audacia, magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia, cupidum rerum novarum: complures annos portoria reliquaque omnia Aeduorum vectigalia parvo pretio redempta habere, propterea quod illo licente contra liceri audeat nemo. His rebus et suam rem

familiarē auxisse et facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse; magnum numerum equitatus suo sumptu semper alere et circum se habere, neque solum domi sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter posse, atque hujus potentiae causa matrem in Biturigibus homini illic nobilissimo ac potentissimo collocasse, ipsum ex Helvetiis uxorem habere, sororem ex matre et propinquas suas nuptum in alias civitates collocasse. Favere et cupere Helvetiis propter eam affinitatem, odisse etiam suo nomine Caesarem et Romanos quod eorum adventu potentia ejus diminuta et Divitiacus frater in antiquum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus. Si quid accidat Romanis, summam in spem per Helvetios regni obtinendi venire; imperio populi Romani non modo de regno, sed etiam de ea quam habeat gratia, desperare. Reperiebat etiam in quaerendo Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diebus esset factum, initium ejus fugae factum a Dumnorige atque ejus equitibus (nam equitatui, quem auxilio Caesari Aedui miserant, Dumnorix praeerat); eorum fuga reliquum esse equitatum perterritum.

19. Quibus rebus cognitis, cum ad has suspiciones certissimae res accederent, quod per fines Sequanorum Helvetios transduxisset, quod obsides inter eos dandos curasset, quod ea omnia non modo injussu suo et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fecisset, quod a magistratu Aeduorum accusaretur, satis esse causae arbitrabatur quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut civitatem animadvertere juberet. His omnibus rebus unum repugnabat, quod Divitiaci fratris summum in populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognoverat; nam ne ejus supplicio Divitiaci animum offenderet verebatur. Itaque prius quam quidquam conaretur, Divitiacum ad se vocari jubet et, quotidianis interpretibus remotis, per C. Valerium Procillum, principem Galliae provinciae, familiarem suum, cui summam omnium rerum fidem habebat, cum eo colloquitur: simul commonefacit quae ipso praesente in concilio Gallorum de Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit quae separatim quisque de eo apud se dixerit. Petit atque hortatur, ut sine ejus offensione animi vel ipse de eo causa cognita statuatur, vel civitatem statuere jubeat.

20. Divitiacus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus, obsecrare coepit, ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret : scire se illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam uteretur. Sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri. Quod si quid ei a Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existimaturum non sua voluntate factum; qua ex re futurum, uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur. Haec cum pluribus verbis flens a Caesare peteret, Caesar ejus dextram prendit; consolatus rogat finem orandi faciat; tanti ejus apud se gratiam esse ostendit, uti et rei publicae injuriam et suum dolorem ejus voluntati ac precibus condonet. Dumnorigem ad se vocat, fratrem adhibet; quae in eo reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intelligat, quae civitas queratur, proponit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspiciones vitet; praeterita se Divitiaco fratri condonare dicit. Dumnorigi custodes ponit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquatur, scire possit.

21. Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus hostes sub monte condesisse milia passuum ab ipsius castris octo, qualis esset natura montis et qualis in circuitu ascensus, qui cognoscerent misit. Renuntiatum est facilem esse. De tertia vigilia T. Labienum, legatum pro praetore, cum duabus legionibus et eis ducibus qui iter cognoverant summum jugum montis ascendere jubet; quid sui consilii sit ostendit. Ipse de quarta vigilia eodem itinere, quo hostes ierant, ad eos contendit, equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. P. Considius, qui rei militaris peritissimus habebatur, et in exercitu L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus praemittitur.

22. Prima luce cum summus mons a T. Labieno teneretur, ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labieni cognitus esset, Considius equo admissus ad eum accurrit, dicit montem, quem a Labieno occupari voluerit, ab hostibus teneri; id se a Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognovisse. Caesar suas copias in

proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. Labienus, ut erat ei praeceptum a Caesare, ne proelium committeret, nisi ipsius copiae prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique uno tempore in hostes impetus fieret, monte occupato nostros expectabat proelioque abstinere. Multo denique die per exploratores Caesar cognovit et montem a suis teneri, et Helvetios castra movisse, et Considium timore perterritum, quod non vidisset pro viso sibi renuntiasse. Eo die, quo consuerat intervallo, hostes sequitur, et milia passuum tria ab eorum castris castra ponit.

23. Postridie ejus diei, quod omnino biduum supererat cum exercitui frumentum metiri oporteret, et quod a Bibracte, oppido Aeduorum longe maximo et copiosissimo, non amplius milibus passuum XVIII aberat, rei frumentariae prospiciendum existimavit; iter ab Helvetiis avertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea res per fugitivos L. Aemilii, decurionis equitum Gallorum, hostibus nuntiatur. Helvetii, seu quod timore perterritos Romanos discedere a se existimarent, eo magis quod pridie superioribus locis occupatis proelium non commisissent, sive eo quod re frumentaria intercludi posse confiderent, commutato consilio atque itinere converso, nostros a novissimo agmine insequi ac lacessere coeperunt.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, copias suas Caesar in proximum collem subducit, equitatumque qui sustineret hostium impetum misit. Ipse interim in colle medio triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quattuor veteranarum, [ita uti supra] sed in summo jugo duas legiones quas in Gallia citeriore proxime conscripserat et omnia auxilia collocari, ac totum montem hominibus compleri; interea sarcinas in unum locum conferri, et eum ab his, qui in superiore acie constiterant, muniri jussit. Helvetii cum omnibus suis carris secuti, impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt; ipsi confertissima acie, rejecto nostro equitatu, phalange facta, sub primam nostram aciem successerunt.

25. Caesar primum suo, deinde omnium ex conspectu remotis equis, ut aequato omnium periculo spem fugae tolleret, cohortatus suos proelium cominisit. Milites e loco superiore, pilis missis, facile hostium phalangem perfregerunt. Ea disjecta, gladiis destitutis in eos impetum fecerunt. Gallis magno ad pugnam erat impedimento, quod

pluribus eorum scutis uno ictu pilorum transfixis et colligatis, cum ferrum se inflexisset, neque evellere neque sinistra impedita satis commode pugnare poterant, multi ut, diu jactato brachio, praeoptarent scutum manu emittere et nudo corpore pugnare. Tandem vulneribus defessi et pedem referre, et, quod mons suberat circiter mille passuum, eo se recipere coeperunt. Capto monte et succedentibus nostris, Boii et Tulingi, qui hominum milibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudebant et novissimis praesidio erant, ex itinere nostros latere aperto adgressi circumvenere, et id conspicati Helvetii, qui in montem sese receperant, rursus instare et proelium redintegrare coeperunt. Romani conversa signa bipartito intulerunt: prima et secunda acies ut victis ac summotis resisteret, tertia ut venientes sustineret.

26. Ita ancipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est. Diutius cum sustinere nostrorum impetus non possent, alteri se ut coeperant in montem receperunt, alteri ad impedimenta et carros suos se contulerunt: nam hoc toto proelio, cum ab hora septima ad vesperum pugnatum sit, aversum hostem videre nemo potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnatum est, propterea quod pro vallo carros objecerant, et e loco superiore in nostros venientes tela coniciebant, et nonnulli inter carros rotasque mataras ac tragulas subiciebant, nostrosque vulnerabant. Diu cum esset pugnatum, impedimentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus e filiis captus est. Ex eo proelio circiter hominum milia cxxx superfuerunt, eaque tota nocte continenter ierunt: nullam partem noctis itinere intermisso, in fines Lingonum die quarto pervenerunt, cum et propter vulnera militum, et propter sepulturam occisorum, nostri triduum morati eos sequi non potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litteras nuntiosque misit, ne eos frumento neve alia re juvarent; qui si juvissent, se eodem loco quo Helvetios habiturum. Ipse, triduo intermisso, cum omnibus copiis eos sequi coepit.

27. Helvetii omnium rerum inopia adducti, legatos de deditioe ad eum miserunt. Qui cum eum in itinere convenissent, seque ad pedes projecissent, suppliciterque locuti flentes pacem petissent, atque eos in eo loco quo tum essent suum adventum expectare jussisset, paruerunt. Eo postquam Caesar pervenit, obsides, arma, servos qui ad

eos perfugissent, poposcit. Dum ea conquiruntur et conferuntur, nocte intermissa, circiter hominum milia VI. ejus pagi, qui Verbigenus appellatur, sive timore perterriti, ne armis traditis supplicio afficerentur, sive spe salutis inducti quod in tanta multitudine dediticiorum suam fugam aut occultari aut omnino ignorari posse existimarent, prima nocte e castris Helvetiorum egressi, ad Rhenum finesque Germanorum contenderunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quorum per fines ierant, his uti conquirent et reducerent, si sibi purgati esse vellent, imperavit: reductos in hostium numero habuit: reliquos omnes obsidibus, armis, perfugis traditis, in deditionem accepit. Helvetios, Tulingos, Latobrigos in fines suos unde erant profecti, reverti jussit, et quod omnibus frugibus amissis, domi nihil erat quo famem tolerarent, Allobrogibus imperavit ut iis frumenti copiam facerent: ipsos oppida vicosque quos incenderant restituere jussit. Id ea maxime ratione fecit, quod noluit eum locum unde Helvetii discesserant vacare, ne propter bonitatem agrorum Germani, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, e suis finibus in Helvetiorum fines transirent, et finitimi Galliae provinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boios petentibus Aeduis, quod egregia virtute erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis collocarent, concessit; quibus illi agros dederunt, quosque postea in parem juris libertatisque conditionem atque ipsi erant receperunt.

29. In castris Helvetiorum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecis confectae et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in tabulis nominatim ratio confecta erat, qui numerus domo exisset eorum qui arma ferre possent, et item separatim pueri, senes, mulieresque. Quarum omnium rerum summa erat capitum Helvetiorum milia CCLXIII., Tulingorum milia XXXVI., Latobrigorum XIV., Rauracorum XXIII., Boiorum XXXII.: ex his qui arma ferre possent, ad milia XCII. Summa omnium fuerunt ad milia CCCLXVIII. Eorum qui domum redierunt, censu habito, ut Caesar imperaverat, repertus est numerus milium C. et X.



APPENDIX.

THIS Appendix is designed to present the various forms of inflection of the Latin language, and also to exhibit in a connected manner the more important principles of grammatical construction which have been developed in the notes to the lessons. The figures of reference are to the lessons and notes, where the principles are first explained and illustrated.

NOUNS.

1. FIRST OR **a** DECLENSION. V., Rem. 1, 2, N. 1, 3.

Singular.	<i>cause</i> (f.)	
Nom.	causa	a cause
Gen.	causae	of a cause
Dat.	causae	to or for a cause
Acc.	causam	a cause
Voc.	causa	O cause, or thou cause
Abl.	causā	with, by, from a cause
Plural.		
Nom.	causae	causes
Gen.	causārum	of causes
Dat.	causis	to or for causes
Acc.	causas	causes
Voc.	causae	O causes, or ye causes
Abl.	causis	by, from, in, with causes

2. SECOND OR **o** DECLENSION. VI., Rem. N. 1, 2; XV. 3.

Singular.	<i>mind</i> (m.)	<i>boy</i> (m.)	<i>field</i> (m.)	<i>war</i> (n.)
N.	animus	puer	ager	bellum
G.	animi	pueri	agri	belli
D.	animo	puero	agro	bello
Ac.	animum	puerum	agrum	bellum
V.	anime	puer	ager	bellum
Ab.	animo	puero	agro	bello

Plural.

N.	animi	pueri	agri	bella
G.	animōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	bellōrum
D.	animis	pueris	agris	bellis
Ac.	animos	pueros	agros	bella
V.	animi	pueri	agri	bella
Ab.	animis	pueris	agris	bellis

3. THIRD DECLENSION. Stems ending in a consonant or i. X., Rem. 1, N. 1.

a. Stem ending in a mute. X., Rem. 2, N. 1, a.

Sing.	<i>law</i> (f.)	<i>guide</i> (c.)	<i>soldier</i> (m.)	<i>state</i> (f.)	<i>head</i> (n.)
N.	lex	dux	miles	civitas	caput
G.	legis	ducis	militis	civitātis	capitis
D.	legi	duci	militi	civitāti	capiti
Ac.	legem	ducem	militem	civitātem	caput
V.	lex	dux	miles	civitas	caput
Ab.	lege	duce	milite	civitāte	capite

Plural.

N.	leges	duces	milites	civitātes	capita
G.	legum	ducum	militum	civitātum	capitum
D.	legibus	ducibus	militibus	civitatibus	capitibus
Ac.	leges	duces	milites	civitātes	capita
V.	leges	duces	milites	civitātes	capita
Ab.	legibus	ducibus	militibus	civitatibus	capitibus

b. Stem ending in a liquid. X., Rem. 3.

Singular.	<i>consul</i> (m.)	<i>sister</i> (f.)	<i>father</i> (m.)	<i>name</i> (n.)	<i>body</i> (n.)
N.	consul	soror	pater	nomen	corpus
G.	consulis	sorōris	patris	nominis	corporis
D.	consuli	sorōri	patri	nomini	corpori
Ac.	consulem	sorōrem	patrem	nomen	corpus
V.	consul	soror	pater	nomen	corpus
Ab.	consule	sorōre	patre	nomine	corpore

Plural.

N., Ac., V.	consules	sorōres	patres	nomina	corpora
G.	consulum	sorōrum	patrum	nominum	corporum
D., Ab.	consulibus	sororibus	patribus	nominibus	corporibus

c. Stem ending in *i*. X., Rem. 4, N. 1, *b*, 2, 3.

Sing	<i>tower</i> (f.)	<i>cloud</i> (f.)	<i>sea</i> (n.)	<i>animal</i> (n.)	<i>spur</i> (n.)
N.	turris	nubes	mare	animal	calcar
G.	turris	nubis	maris	animālis	calcāris
D.	turri	nubi	mari	animāli	calcāri
Ac.	turrem (im)	nubem	mare	animal	calcar
V.	turris	nubes	mare	animal	calcar
Ab.	turre (i)	nube	mari	animāli	calcāri
Plural.					
N.	turres	nubes	maria	animalia	calcaria
G.	turrium	nubium	marium	animalium	calcarium
D.	turribus	nubibus	maribus	animalibus	calcaribus
Ac.	turres (is)	nubes (is)	maria	animalia	calcaria
V.	turres	nubes	maria	animalia	calcaria
Ab.	turribus	nubibus	maribus	animalibus	calcaribus

d. Stem ending in a consonant in the singular and in a vowel (*i*) in the plural. X., 4.

Sing.	<i>city</i> (f.)	<i>night</i> (f.)	<i>age</i> (f.)	<i>mouse</i> (m.)	<i>shower</i> (m.)
N.	urbs	nox	aetas	mus	imber
G.	urbis	noctis	aetātis	muris	imbris
D.	urbi	nocti	aetāti	muri	imbri
Ac.	urbem	noctem	aetātem	murem	imbrem
V.	urbs	nox	aetas	mus	imber
Ab.	urbe	nocte	aetāte	mure	imbre (i)
Plural.					
N.	urbes	noctes	aetātes	mures	imbres
G.	urbium	noctium	aetatium (um)	murium	imbrium
D.	urbibus	noctibus	aetatibus	muribus	imbribus
Ac.	urbes (is)	noctes (is)	aetātes (is)	mures (is)	imbres (is)
V.	urbes	noctes	aetātes	mures	imbres
Ab.	urbibus	noctibus	aetatibus	muribus	imbribus

e. The following are among those sometimes classed as irregular because exhibiting peculiar forms:—

Singular.	<i>ox</i> (c.)	<i>old man</i> (m.)	<i>flesh</i> (f.)	<i>bone</i> (n.)	<i>force</i> (f.)
N., V.	bos	senex	caro	os	vis
G.	bovis	senis	carnis	ossis	vis (rare)
D.	bovi	seni	carni	ossi	—
Ac.	bovem	senem	carnem	os	vim
Ab.	bove	sene	carne	osse	vi

Plural.	<i>cattle.</i>				<i>strength.</i>
N., A., V.	boves	senes	carnes	ossa	vires
G.	boum (bovum)	senum	carnium	ossium	virium
D. Ab.	bobus (bubus)	senibus	carnibus	ossibus	viribus

4. FOURTH OR u DECLENSION. XXIII., 1.

Singular.	<i>hand (f.)</i>	<i>lake (m.)</i>	<i>knee (n.)</i>
N.	manus	lacus	genu
G.	manus	lacus	genu (us)
D.	manui (u)	lacui (u)	genu
Ac.	manum	lacum	genu
V.	manus	lacus	genu
Ab.	manu	lacu	genu
Plural.			
N.	manus	lacus	genua
G.	manuum	lacuum	genuum
D.	manibus	lacubus	genibus
Ac.	manus	lacus	genua
V.	manus	lacus	genua
Ab.	manibus	lacubus	genibus

Domus, *house*, has two stems, ending in **u** and **o**, and is declined as follows :

	Singular.	Plural.
N.	domus	domus
G.	domus (domi, loc.)	domuum (domōrum)
D.	domui (domo)	domibus
Ac.	domum	domos (domus)
V.	domus	domus
Ab.	domo (domu)	domibus

5. FIFTH OR e DECLENSION. XVI., Rem. 1, 2, N. 1.

<i>day (m.)</i>		<i>thing (f.)</i>	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. dies	dies	res	res
G. diēi	diērum	rei (N. 22, <i>d</i>)	rerum
D. diēi	diēbus	rei	rebus
Ac. diem	dies	rem	res
V. dies	dies	res	res
Ab. die	diēbus	re	rebus

ADJECTIVES.

6. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS. VII., Rem.

a. Masc. ending in -us.

Magnus, great.

Singular.	M.	F.	N.
N.	magnus	magna	magnum
G.	magni	magnae	magni
D.	magno	magnae	magno
Ac.	magnum	magnam	magnum
V.	magne	magna	magnum
Ab.	magno	magnā	magno
Plural.			
N.	magni	magnae	magna
G.	magnōrum	magnārum	magnōrum
D.	magnis	magnis	magnis
Ac.	magnos	magnas	magna
V.	magni	magnae	magna
Ab.	magnis	magnis	magnis

b. Masc. ending in -er. VII., Note.

Miser, wretched.**Niger**, black.

Singular.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	miser	misera	miserum	niger	nigra	nigrum
G.	miseri	miserae	miseri	nigri	nigrae	nigri
D.	misero	miserae	misero	nigro	nigrae	nigro
Ac.	miserum	miseram	miserum	nigrum	nigram	nigrum
V.	miser	misera	miserum	niger	nigra	nigrum
Ab.	misero	miserā	misero	nigro	nigrā	nigro
Plural.						
N.	miseri	miserae	misera	nigri	nigrae	nigra
G.	miserō-	miserā-	miserō-	nigrō-	nigrā-	nigrō-
	rum	rum	rum	rum	rum	rum
D.	miseris	miseris	miseris	nigris	nigris	nigris
Ac.	miseros	miseras	misera	nigros	nigras	nigra
V.	miseri	miserae	misera	nigri	nigrae	nigra
Ab.	miseris	miseris	miseris	nigris	nigris	nigris

c. The following, with their compounds, have the genitive singular in **īus** and the dative in **ī** in all the genders : **alter** has gen. in **-īus**.

alius (<i>n. aliud</i>), other	totus , whole	alter , other (of two)
nullus , none	ullus , any	neuter , - trīus , neither
solus , alone	unus , one	uter , - trīus , which (of two)

Of these the singular is thus declined : —

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	unus	una	unum	uter	utra	utrum
G.	unīus	unīus	unīus	utrīus	utrīus	utrīus
D.	uni	uni	uni	utri	utri	utri
Ac.	unum	unam	unum	utrum	utram	utrum
Ab.	uno	unā	uno	utro	utrā	utro
N.	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
G.	aliūs	aliūs	aliūs	alterius	alterius	alterius
D.	alii	alii	alii	alteri	alteri	alteri
Ac.	alium	aliam	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
Ab.	alio	aliā	alio	altero	alterā	altero

The plurals are regular, like those of **magnus**.

7. THIRD DECLENSION. X., Rem. preceding inflection of **omnis**, and Rem. 5.

a. Vowel (i) stems with three terminations in nom. sing.

Acer, sharp (*stem acri-*).

Singular.	M.	F.	N.	Plural.	M.	F.	N.
N., V.	acer	acris	acre		acres	acres	acria
G.	acris	acris	acris		acrium	acrium	acrium
D.	acri	acri	acri		acribus	acribus	acribus
Ac.	acrem	acrem	acre		acres (is)	acres (is)	acria
Ab.	acri	acri	acri		acribus	acribus	acribus

b. Vowel (i) stems with two terminations in nom. sing. Cf. **omnis**, X., 3.

Levis, light (*stem, levi-*).

Singular.	M., F.	N.	Plural.	M., F.	N.
N., V.	levis	leve		leves	levia
G.	levis	levis		levium	levium
D.	levi	levi		levibus	levibus
Ac.	levem	leve		leves (is)	levia
Ab.	levi	levi		levibus	levibus

c. Consonant stems with one termination in nom. sing., with the form of *i-* stems in abl. sing. (*e* or *i*), in neut. plur. (*-ia*), and gen. plur. (*-ium*). XI. 2.

Audax, bold (*stem audac-*).

Singular.	M., F.	N.	Plural.	M., F.	N.
N.	audax	audax	audāces		audacia
G.	audācis	audācis	audacium		audacium
D.	audāci	audāci	audacibus		audacibus
Ac.	audācem	audax	audāces (is)		audacia
V.	audax	audax	audāces		audacia
Ab.	audāce (i)	audāce (i)	audacibus		audacibus

Recens, recent (*stem recent-*).

N.	recens	recens	recentes	recentia
G.	recentis	recentis	recentium	recentium
D.	recenti	recenti	recentibus	recentibus
Ac.	recentem	recens	recentes (is)	recentia
V.	recens	recens	recentes	recentia
Ab.	recente (i)	recente (i)	recentibus	recentibus

d. Other examples are : —

Singular.	M., F. (<i>going</i>)	N.	M., F. (<i>equal</i>)	N.
N. V.	iens	iens	par	par
G.	euntis	euntis	paris	paris
D.	eunti	eunti	pari	pari
Ac.	euntem	iens	parem	par
Ab.	eunte (i)	eunte (i)	pari	pari
Plural.				
N. V.	euntes	euntia	pares	paria
G.	euntium	euntium	parium	parium
D.	euntibus	euntibus	paribus	paribus
Ac.	euntes	euntia	pares	paria
Ab.	euntibus	euntibus	paribus	paribus
Singular.	M., F. (<i>headlong</i>)	N.	M., F. (<i>rich</i>)	N.
N. V.	praeceps	praeceps	dives	dives
G.	praecipitis	praecipitis	divitis	divitis
D.	praecipiti	praecipiti	diviti	diviti
Ac.	praecipitem	praeceps	divitem	dives
Ab.	praecipiti	praecipiti	divite	divite

Plural.	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
N. V.	praecipites	praecipitia	divites	[ditia]
G.	praecipitium	praecipitium	divitum	divitum
D.	praecipitibus	praecipitibus	divitibus	divitibus
Ac.	praecipites	praecipitia	divites	[ditia]
Ab.	praecipitibus	praecipitibus	divitibus	divitibus
Singular.	M., F. (<i>fertile</i>)	N.	M., F. (<i>old</i>)	N.
N. V.	uber	uber	vetus	vetus
G.	uberis	uberis	veteris	veteris
D.	uberi	uberi	veteri	veteri
Ac.	uberem	uber	veterem	vetus
Ab.	ubere	ubere	vetere	vetere
Plural.				
N. V.	uberes	ubera	veteres	vetera
G.	uberum	uberum	veterum	veterum
D.	uberibus	uberibus	veteribus	veteribus
Ac.	uberes	ubera	veteres	vetera
Ab.	uberibus	uberibus	veteribus	veteribus

8. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. XI. 1 (Comp.). XIII. 3 (Sup.)

a. Comparatives have two terminations in the nom. sing. and are regularly declined as follows:—

fortis, brave; (*comp.*) **fortior**, braver.

	Singular.		Plural.	
	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
N.	fortior	fortius	fortiōres	fortiōra
G.	fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
D.	fortiōri	fortiōri	fortioribus	fortioribus
Ac.	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōres (is)	fortiōra
V.	fortior	fortius	fortiōres	fortiōra
Ab.	fortiōre (i)	fortiōre (i)	fortioribus	fortioribus

Plus, more, is a neuter noun in the singular and an adjective in the plural.

	Singular.		Plural.
	N.	M., F.	N.
N. V.	plus	plures	plura
G.	pluris	plurium	plurium
D.	—	pluribus	pluribus
Ac.	plus	plures (is)	plura
Ab.	plure	pluribus	pluribus

b. In the following adjectives the three forms of comparison are derived from different stems : —

bonus, melior, optimus, good, better, best.
malus, pejor (peior), pessimus, bad, worse, worst.
magnus, major (maior), maximus, great, greater, greatest.
parvus, minor, minimus, small, less, least.
multus, plus (u.), plurimus, much, more, most.
multi, plures, plurimi, many, more, most.
nequam (indecl.), nequior, nequissimus, worthless.
frugi (indecl.), frugalior, frugalissimus, useful, worthy.
dexter, dexterior, dextimus, on the right, dexterous.

c. The following Comparatives and Superlatives appear without a Positive because formed from stems not used as adjectives : —

cis, citra (adv. on this side) : **citerior, citimus**, hither, hithermost.
in, intra (prep. in, within) : **interior, intimus**, inner, inmost.
prae, pro (prep. before) : **prior, primus**, former, first.
prope (adv. near) : **propior, proximus**, nearer, next.
ultra (adv. beyond) : **ulterior, ultimus**, farther, farthest.

d. Of the following the positive forms are rare, except when used as nouns (generally in the plural) : —

exterus, exterior, extrēmus (extimus), outer, outmost.
inferus, inferior, infimus (imus), lower, lowest.
posterus, posterior, postrēmus (postumus), latter, last.
superus, superior, suprēmus or summus, higher, highest.

The plurals, **exteri, foreigners** ; **posterī, posterity** ; **superī, the heavenly gods** ; **inferī, those below**, are common.

e. The following in **-lis** add **-limus** to the stem clipped of its vowel : **facilis, difficilis, similis, dissimilis, gracilis, humilis** ; comparative regular : as, **facilis, easy** ; **facilior, facillimus**.

f. Adjectives in **-er** form the superlative by adding **-rimus** to the nominative ; the comparative is regular : as **acer, keen** ; **acrior, acerrimus**.

9. ADVERBS. *a.* FORMATION. XIII. 1. *b.* COMPARISON. XV. 2.10. *a.* The NUMERAL ADJECTIVES and ADVERBS are : —

ROMAN NUMERALS.	CARDINAL, answering the question, <i>How many?</i>	ORDINAL, answering the question, <i>Which in order?</i>	DISTRIBUTIVE, answering the question, <i>How many each?</i>	ADVERBS, answering the question, <i>How often?</i>
I. unus, -a, -um	primus, -a, -um	singuli, one by	semel, once	
II. duo, -ae, -o	secundus <i>or</i> alter	bini [one	bis	
III. tres, tria	tertius	terni <i>or</i> trini	ter	
IV. quattuor	quartus	quaterni	quater	
V. quinque	quintus	quini	quinquies	
VI. sex	sextus	seni	sexies	
VII. septem	septimus	septeni	septies	
VIII. octo	octāvus	octōni	octies	
IX. novem	nonus	novēni	novies	
X. decem	decimus	deni	decies	
XI. undecim	undecimus	undēni	undecies	
XII. duodecim	duodecim	duodēni	duodecies	
XIII. tredecim	tertius decimus	terni deni	tredecies	
XIV. quattuordecim	quartus decimus	quaterni deni	quattuordecies	
XV. quindecim	quintus decimus	quini deni	quindecies	
XVI. sedecim	sextus decimus	seni deni	sedecies	
XVII. septendecim	septimus decimus	septēni deni	septies decies	
XVIII. duodeviginti (octodecim)	duodevicesimus	duodevicēni	duodevicies	
XIX. undeviginti (novendecim)	undevicesimus	undevicēni	undevicies	
XX. viginti	vicesimus	vicēni	vicies	
XXI. unus et viginti (viginti unus)	vicesimus primus	vicēni singuli	semel et vicies	
XXX. triginta	tricesimus	tricēni	trices	
XL. quadraginta	quadragismus	quadragēni	quadragies	
L. quinquaginta	quinquagesimus	quinquagēni	quinquagies	
LX. sexaginta	sexagesimus	sexagēni	sexagies	
LXX. septuaginta	septuagesimus	septuagēni	septuagies	
LXXX. octoginta	octogesimus	octogēni	octogies	
XC. nonaginta	nonagesimus	nonagēni	nonagies	
C. centum	centesimus	centēni	centies	
CI. centum et unus	centesimus primus	centēni singuli	centies semel	
CC. ducenti, -ae, -a	ducesimus	ducēni	ducenties	
CCC. trecenti	trecentesimus	trecēni	trecenties	
CCCC. quadringenti	quadringentesimus	quadringēni	quadringenties	
IO. <i>or</i> D. quingenti	quingentesimus	quingēni	quingenties	
DC. sexcenti	sexcentesimus	sescēni	sexcenties	
DCC. septingenti	septingentesimus	septingēni	septingenties	
DCCC. octingenti	octingentesimus	octingēni	octingenties	
DCCCC. nongenti	nongentesimus	nongēni	nongenties	
CIO. <i>or</i> M. mille	millesimus	singula millia	millies	
IOO. duo millia	bis millesimus	bina millia	bis millies	

b. The Cardinals from **quattuor** to **centum**, inclusive, are indeclinable.

c. The hundreds are declined like the plural of **magnus**.

d. **Mille**, as an adjective, is indeclinable. As a substantive, **mille** is used in the Neut. Sing., Nom. and Acc. The plural is inflected like the plural of **mare** (App. 3, *c.*): **milia**, **milium**, etc.

e. The inflection of **unus** is given in App. 6, *c.*

f. **Tres**, **tria**, is an *i*-stem, and is regularly declined like the plural of **omnis** or **levis**.

g. **Duo** and **ambo** (*both*), are thus declined:—

N.	duo	duae	duo
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Acc.	duos (duo)	duas	duo
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

11. PRONOUNS.

a. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

First Person.			Second Person.	
N.	ego , I	nos , we	tu , thou	vos , ye or you
G.	mei , of me	nostrum (tri) , of us	tui	vestrum (tri)
D.	mihi , to me	nobis , to us	tibi	vobis
Ac.	me , me	nos , us	te	vos
V.	—	—	tu	vos
Ab.	me , by me	nobis , by us	te	vobis

Rem. The personal pronouns of the third person — *he, she, it, they* — are wanting in Latin, the demonstrative **is** being commonly used.

b. THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN OF THE THIRD PERSON (referring to the subject of the sentence or clause, and hence used only in the oblique cases) is the same in the singular and plural: viz., —

G.	sui ,	of himself, herself, themselves
D.	sibi ,	to “ “ “
Ac.	se (sese)	“ “ “
Ab.	se (sese) , by	“ “ “

c. THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS,

meus , my,	noster , our,
tuus , thy, your,	vester , your,
suus , his, her, its,	suus , their,

are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions : **meus**, **mea**, **meum** ; **noster**, **nostra**, **nostrum** ; but **meus** has in the vocative singular masculine generally **mi**, sometimes **meus**.

d. THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS are used either *with nouns* as adjectives, or *alone* as pronouns ; and, from their signification, cannot (except **ipse**) have a vocative. They are thus declined : —

Singular.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	hic	haec	hoc , this	is	ea	id , that
G.	hujus	hujus	hujus	ejus	ejus	ejus
D.	huic	huic	huic	ei	ei	ei
Ac.	hunc	hanc	hoc	eum	eam	id
Ab.	hoc	hac	hoc	eo	ea	eo
Plural.						
N.	hi	hae	haec , these	ei (ii)	eae	ea , those
G.	horum	harum	horum	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D.	his	his	his		eis (iis)	
Ac.	hos	has	haec	eos	eas	ea
Ab.	his	his	his		eis (iis)	
Singular.						
N.	ille	illa	illud , that	ipse	ipsa	ipsum , self
G.	illius	illius	illius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
D.	illi	illi	illi	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi
Ac.	illum	illam	illud	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
Ab.	illo	illa	illo	ipso	ipsa	ipso

Rem. 1. The plural of **illa** and **ipse** is like that of **magnus**.

Rem. 2. **Iste**, **ista**, **istud**, *that* (near to you), is inflected like **ille**.

Singular.	(the same)			Plural.	
N.	idem	eādem	idem	iidem (ei-)	eaedem eadem
G.	ejusdem	ejusdem	ejusdem	eorundem	earundem eorundem
D.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem		eisdem (iisdem)
Ac.	eundem	eandem	idem	eosdem	eadem eadem
Ab.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem		eisdem (iisdem)

e. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN **qui**, *who, which, that*, is thus declined : —

	Singular.			Plural.		
N.	qui	quae	quod	qui	quae	quae
G.	cujus	cujus	cujus	quorum	quarum	quorum
D.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quod	quos	quas	quae
Ab.	quo	qua	quo	quibus	quibus	quibus

f. THE INTERROGATIVE **quis (qui)** *who? which?* is declined in the singular as follows : —

N.	quis (qui)	quae	quid (quod)
G.	cujus	cujus	cujus
D.	cui	cui	cui
Ac.	quem	quam	quid (quod)
Ab.	quo	qua	quo

The forms **quis**, **quae**, **quid**, are substantive. **Qui** and **quod** are adjective forms. The plural is the same as that of the relative.

g. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

The Indefinite **quis**, **qui**, *any*, is inflected like the interrogative.

The Indefinite Compounds **siquis**, **siqui** (**si quis**, **si qui**), *if any one, if any*; **nequis**, **nequi** (**ne quis**, **ne qui**), *lest any one, lest any*; **num quis**, **num qui**, *whether any one, whether any*; **aliquis** (**alius + quis**), *some one or other, some one, some*, are thus declined : —

	Singular.			Plural.		
N.	aliquis	aliqua	aliquid	aliqui	aliquae	aliqua
	(aliqui)		(aliquod)			
G.		alicūjus		aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
D.		alicui			aliquibus	
Ac.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid	aliquos	aliquas	aliqua
			(aliquod)			
Ab.	aliquo	aliqua	aliquo		aliquibus	

The Indefinite Compounds **quidam**, *a, a certain, a certain one*; **quispiam**, *any one, any*; **quisquam**, *any one at all*; **quivis** (**qui + vis**, from **volo**), *any one you wish, any one, any*; **quilibet** (**qui + libet**, *it pleases*), *any one you please, any one, any*, are inflected like the simple forms of **quis** and **qui**. Cf. *e.* and *f.* above.

The Indefinite Relative **quicumque** (**qui** + **-cumque**, *ever*), *whoever*, is declined like **qui**.

The Indefinite Relative **quisquis** (**quis** + **quis**), *whoever*, has both parts declined, but certain forms are wanting : —

Singular.		
N.	quisquis (quiqui)	quidquid (quicquid)
Ac.	quemquem	quidquid (quicquid)
Ab.	quoquo	quaqua quoquo
Plural.		
N.	quiqui	D., Ab. quibusquibus

The Universal Indefinite **quisque**, *each one, every one*, is inflected like the simple **quis**.

12. REGULAR VERBS.

First Conjugation. ACTIVE VOICE.

Rem. In the first conjugation the verb **amo** is so exhibited as to show the root, stem vowel, tense sign (if any), and the personal endings. When the vowel of the stem or tense sign has been contracted with the vowel of the ending, the contracted vowel is enclosed in parentheses.

For formation of the various forms of the verb, *vid.* XIX.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: Pres. **amo**, Infin. **amā-re**, Perf. **amāv-i**, Perf. Part. **amāt-us**.

INDICATIVE MODE (MODUS INDICATIVUS).

PRESENT TENSE (Tempus Praesens).

Singular.	Plural.
am-(a)-o , I love.	am-ā-mus , we love.
am-a-s , you love.	am-ā-tis , you love.
am-a-t , he (she) loves.	am-a-nt , they love.

IMPERFECT TENSE (Tempus Imperfectum).

am-ā-ba-m , I was loving.	am-a-bā-mus , we were loving.
am-ā-ba-s , you were loving.	am-a-bā-tis , you were loving.
am-ā-ba-t , he was loving.	am-ā-ba-nt , they were loving.

FUTURE TENSE (Tempus Futurum).

am-ā-b(i ?)-o , I shall love.	am-a-bi-mus , we shall love.
am-ā-bi-s , you will love.	am-a-bi-tis , you will love.
am-ā-bi-t , he will love.	am-ā-bu-nt , they will love.

PERFECT TENSE (Tempus Perfectum).

am-ā-v-i , I have loved, I loved.	am-a-v-imus , we have loved, we loved.
am-a-v-isti , you have loved, you loved.	am-a-v-istis , you have loved, you loved.
am-ā-v-it , he has loved, he loved.	am-a-v-ērunt , <i>or ēre</i> , they have loved, they loved.

PLUPERFECT TENSE (Tempus Plusquamperfectum).

am-a-v-era-m , I had loved.	am-a-v-erā-mus , we had loved.
am-a-v-era-s , you had loved.	am-a-v-erā-tis , you had loved.
am-a-v-era-t , he had loved.	am-a-v-era-nt , they had loved.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE (Tempus Futurum Exactum).

am-a-v-er(i ?)-o , I shall have loved.	am-a-v-eri-mus , we shall have loved.
am-a-v-eri-s , you will have loved.	am-a-v-eri-tis , you will have loved.
am-a-v-eri-t , he will have loved.	am-a-v-eri-nt , they will have loved.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE (MODUS SUBJUNCTIVUS).

PRESENT.

am-e-m	(No single English expression would fairly represent the Latin subjunctive.)	am-ē-mus
am-e-s		am-ē-tis
am-e-t		am-e-nt

IMPERFECT.

am-ā-re-m	am-a-rē-mus
am-ā-re-s	am-a-rē-tis
am-ā-re-t	am-ā-re-nt

PERFECT.

am-a-v-eri-m	am-a-v-eri-mus
am-a-v-eri-s	am-a-v-eri-tis
am-a-v-eri-t	am-a-v-eri-nt

PLUPERFECT.

am-a-v-is-se-m	am-a-v-issē-mus
am-a-v-is-se-s	am-a-v-issē-tis
am-a-v-is-se-t	am-a-v-is-se-nt

IMPERATIVE MODE (MODUS IMPERATIVUS).

PRESENT.

2. **am-a**, love thou.**am-ā-te**, love ye.

FUTURE.

2. **am-ā-to**, thou shalt love.**am-a-tōte**, ye shall love.3. **am-ā-to**, he shall love.**am-a-nto**, they shall love.

INFINITIVE MODE (MODUS INFINITIVUS).

Pres. **am-ā-re**, to love.*Perf.* **am-a-v-isse**, to have loved.*Fut.* **am-a-t-ūrus esse**, to be about to love, to purpose to love.

PARTICIPLES (PARTICIPIA).

Pres. **amans**, loving. Gen. **amantis**. For inflection, *vid.* App. 7, c.*Fut.* **am-a-t-ūrus**, -a, -um, about to love. (Inflected like **magnus**.)

GERUND (GERUNDIUM).

G. **am-a-ndi**, of loving.D. **am-a-ndo**, for loving.Ac. **am-a-ndum**, loving.Ab. **am-a-ndo**, by loving.

SUPINE (SUPINUM).

Ac. **am-ā-t-u-m**, to loveAb. **am-ā-t-u**, to love.**First Conjugation.** PASSIVE VOICE.For formation of the passive, *vid.* XXVII.PRINCIPAL PARTS : *Pres.* **amor**, *Inf.* **amā-ri**, *Perf.* **amātus sum**.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.

am-(ā)-or, I am loved.**am-ā-ris (re)**, you are loved.**am-ā-tur**, he (she, it) is loved.

Plural.

am-ā-mur, we are loved.**am-a-mini**, you are loved.**am-a-ntur**, they are loved.

IMPERFECT.

I was loved.

am-ā-ba-r**am-a-bā-ris (re)****am-a-bā-tur****am-a-bā-mur****am-a-ba-mini****am-a-ba-ntur**

FUTURE.

I shall be loved.

am-ā-b(i ?)-or	am-a-bi-mur
am-a-be-ris (re)	am-a-bi-mini
am-a-bi-tur	am-a-bu-ntur

PERFECT.

I have been loved, was loved.

am-ā-t-us sum	am-ā-t-i sumus
am-ā-t-us es	am-ā-t-i estis
am-ā-t-us est	am-ā-t-i sunt

PLUPERFECT.

I had been loved.

am-ā-t-us eram	am-ā-t-i erāmus
am-ā-t-us eras	am-ā-t-i erātis
am-ā-t-us erat	am-ā-t-i erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have been loved.

am-ā-t-us ero	am-ā-t-i erimus
am-ā-t-us eris	am-ā-t-i eritis
am-ā-t-us erit	am-ā-t-i erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT.

am-e-r	am-ē-mur
am-ē-ris (re)	am-e-mini
am-ē-tur	am-e-ntur

IMPERFECT.

am-ā-r-er	am-a-rē-mur
am-a-rē-ris (re)	am-a-re-mini
am-a-rē-tur	am-a-re-ntur

PERFECT.

am-ā-t-us sim	am-ā-t-i simus
am-ā-t-us sis	am-ā-t-i sitis
am-ā-t-us sit	am-ā-t-i sint

PLUPERFECT.

am-ā-t-us essem	am-ā-t-i essēmus
am-ā-t-us esses	am-ā-t-i essētis
am-ā-t-us esset	am-ā-t-i essent

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

2. **am-ā-re**, be thou loved. 2. **am-a-mini**, be ye loved.

FUTURE.

2. **am-ā-tor**, thou shalt be loved.
 3. **am-ā-tor**, he shall be loved. 3. **am-a-ntor**, they shall be loved.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLES.

- Pres.* **am-ā-ri**, to be loved. *Perf.* **am-ā-t-us**, loved, having been loved.
Perf. **am-ā-t-us esse**, to have been loved. *Future (Gerundive)*, **am-a-nd-us, -a, -um**, to be loved.
Fut. **am-ā-t-um iri** (*amātus fore*), to be about to be loved, to purpose to be loved.

Second Conjugation.

For formation of the verb *vid.* XXXI.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : ACT. **moneo monēre monui monitus**
 PASS. **moneor monēri monitus sum**

INDIC. Active. SUBJ. INDIC. Passive. SUBJ.

PRESENT.

moneo, I warn.	moneam	moneor	monear
mones, you warn.	moneas	monēris (re)	moneāris (re)
monet, he warns.	moneat	monētur	moneātur
monēmus	moneāmus	monēmur	moneāmur
monētis	moneātis	monemini	moneamini
monent	moneant	monentur	moneantur

IMPERFECT.

monēbam	monērem	monēbar	monērer
monēbas	monēres	monebāris (re)	monerēris (re)
monēbat	monēret	monebātur	monerētur
monebāmus	monerēmus	monebāmur	monerēmur
monebātis	monerētis	monebamini	moneremini
monebant	monērent	monebantur	monerentur

INDIC.	Active.		INDIC.	Passive.	
	SUBJ.	FUTURE.		SUBJ.	
monēbo		monēbor			
monēbis		moneberis (re)			
monēbit		monebitur			
monebimus		monebimur			
monebitis		monebimini			
monēbunt		monebuntur			

PERFECT.			
monui	monuerim	monitus sum	monitus sim
monuisti	monueris	monitus es	monitus sis
monuit	monuerit	monitus est	monitus sit
monuimus	monuerimus	moniti sumus	moniti simus
monuistis	monueritis	moniti estis	moniti sitis
monuērunt (ēre)	monuerint	moniti sunt	moniti sint

PLUPERFECT.			
monueram	monuissem	monitus eram	monitus essem
monueras	monuisses	monitus eras	monitus esses
monuerat	monuisset	monitus erat	monitus esset
monuerāmus	monuissēmus	moniti erāmus	moniti essēmus
monuerātis	monuissētis	moniti erātis	moniti essētis
monuerant	monuissent	moniti erant	moniti essent

FUTURE PERFECT.	
monuero	monitus ero
monueris	monitus eris
monuerit	monitus erit
monuerimus	moniti erimus
monueritis	moniti eritis
monuerint	moniti erunt

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.			
2. mone	2. monēte	2. monēre	2. monemini

FUTURE.			
2. monēto	2. monetōte	2. monētor	—
3. monēto	3. monento	3. monētor	3. monentor

Active.	INFINITIVE.	Passive.
PRES. monēre	PRES. monēri	
PERF. monuisse	PERF. monitus esse	
FUT. monitūrus esse	FUT. monitum iri (monitus fore)	
PARTICIPLES.		
PRES. monens	PERF. monitus	
FUT. monitūrus	GER. monendus, -a, -um	
GERUND.	SUPINE.	
monendi, -do, -dum, -do	monitum, monitu	

Third Conjugation.

For formation of the verb *vid.* XXXVI.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: ACT. *tego tegere texi tectus*
PASS. *tegor tegi tectus sum*

Active.		Passive.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
PRESENT.			
tego, I cover.	tegam	tegor	tegar
tegis, you cover.	tegas	tegeris (re)	tegāris (re)
tegit, he covers.	tegat	tegitur	tegātur
tegitus	tegāmus	tegitur	tegāmur
tegitis	tegātis	tegitur	tegāmini
tegitur	tegant	tegitur	tegantur
IMPERFECT.			
tegebam	tegerem	tegebam	tegerer
tegebas	tegeres	tegebāris (re)	tegerēris (re)
tegebat	tegeret	tegebātur	tegerētur
tegebāmus	tegerēmus	tegebāmur	tegerēmur
tegebātis	tegerētis	tegebāmini	tegeremini
tegebantur	tegerent	tegebantur	tegerentur
FUTURE.			
tegam		tegar	
teges		tegēris (re)	
teget		tegētur	
tegemus		tegemur	
tegetis		tegemini	
tegetur		tegentur	

INDIC.	Active.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	Passive.	SUBJ.
PERFECT.					
texi		texerim	tectus sum		tectus sim
texisti		texeris	tectus es		tectus sis
texit		texerit	tectus est		tectus sit
teximus		texerimus	tecti sumus		tecti simus
texistis		texeritis	tecti estis		tecti sitis
texērunt (ēre)		texerint	tecti sunt		tecti sint
PLUPERFECT.					
texeram		texissem	tectus eram		tectus essem
texeras		texisses	tectus eras		tectus esses
texerat		texisset	tectus erat		tectus esset
texerāmus		texissēmus	tecti erāmus		tecti essēmus
texerātis		texissētis	tecti erātis		tecti essētis
texerant		texissent	tecti erant		tecti essent
FUTURE PERFECT.					
texero			tectus ero		
texeris			tectus eris		
texerit			tectus erit		
texerimus			tecti erimus		
texeritis			tecti eritis		
texerint			tecti erunt		
IMPERATIVE.					
PRESENT.					
2. tege, cover.		tegite	tegere		tegimini
FUTURE.					
2. tegito		tegitōte	tegitōr		
3. tegito		tegunto	tegitōr		teguntor
INFINITIVE.					
PRES. tegere			PRES. tegi		
PERF. texisse			PERF. tectus esse		
FUT. tectūrus esse			FUT. tectum iri (tectus fore)		
PARTICIPLES.					
PRES. tegens			PERF. tectus		
FUT. tectūrus			GER. tegendus, -a, -um		
GERUND.			SUPINE.		
tegendī, -do, -dum, -do			tectum, tectu		

Third Conjugation. VERBS ENDING IN -io.For formation *vid.* XLI.PRINCIPAL PARTS : ACT. *capio capere cepi captus*PASS. *capior capi captus sum.*

Active.		Passive.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
PRESENT.			
<i>capio</i> , I take.	<i>capiam</i>	<i>capior</i>	<i>capiar</i>
<i>capis</i> , you take.	<i>capias</i>	<i>caperis</i> (re)	<i>capiāris</i> (re)
<i>capit</i> , he takes.	<i>capiat</i>	<i>capitur</i>	<i>capiātur</i>
<i>capimus</i>	<i>capiāmus</i>	<i>capimur</i>	<i>capiāmur</i>
<i>capitis</i>	<i>capiātis</i>	<i>capimini</i>	<i>capiamini</i>
<i>capiunt</i>	<i>capiant</i>	<i>capiuntur</i>	<i>capiantur</i>
IMPERFECT.			
<i>capiēbam</i>	<i>caperem</i>	<i>capiēbar</i>	<i>caperer</i>
FUTURE.			
<i>capiam</i>	<i>capiēmus</i>	<i>capiar</i>	<i>capiēmur</i>
<i>capies</i>	<i>capiētis</i>	<i>capiēris</i> (re)	<i>capiemini</i>
<i>capiet</i>	<i>capient</i>	<i>capiētur</i>	<i>capientur</i>
PERF. <i>cepi</i>	<i>ceperim</i>	<i>captus sum</i>	<i>captus sim</i>
PLUP. <i>ceperam</i>	<i>cepissem</i>	<i>captus eram</i>	<i>captus essem</i>
F. P. <i>cepero</i>		<i>captus ero</i>	

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

2. <i>cape</i>	<i>capite</i>	<i>capere</i>	<i>capimini</i>
----------------	---------------	---------------	-----------------

FUTURE.

2. <i>capito</i>	<i>capitōte</i>	<i>capitor</i>	
3. <i>capito</i>	<i>capiunto</i>	<i>capitor</i>	<i>capiuntor</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	<i>capere</i>	<i>capi</i>
PERF.	<i>cepisse</i>	<i>captus esse</i>
FUT.	<i>captūrus esse</i>	<i>captum iri</i> (captus fore).

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	<i>capiens</i>	PERF.	<i>captus</i>
FUT.	<i>captūrus</i>	GER.	<i>capiendus</i> , -a, -um

GERUND.

capiendi, -o, -um, -o.

SUPINE.

captum, -u.

Fourth Conjugation.For formation *vid.* XII.PRINCIPAL PARTS: ACT. **audio audire audīvi audītus.**PASS. **audior audīri audītus sum.**

Active.		Passive.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
PRESENT.			
audio, I hear.	audiam	audior	audiar
audis, you hear.	audias	audīris (re)	audiāris (re)
audit, he hears.	audiat	audītur	audiātur
audīmus	audiāmus	audīmur	audiāmur
audītis	audiātis	audimini	audiamini
audiunt	audiant	audiuntur	audiantur

IMPERFECT.

audiēbam	audīrem	audiēbar	audīrer
audiēbas	audīres	audiebāris (re)	audirēris (re)
audiēbat	audīret	audiebātur	audirētur
audiebāmus	audirēmus	audiebāmur	audirēmur
audiebātis	audirētis	audiebamini	audiremini
audiēbant	audīrent	audiebantur	audirentur

FUTURE.

audiam	audiar
audies	audiēris (re)
audiet	audiētur
audiēmus	audiēmur
audiētis	audiemini
audient	audientur

PERFECT.

audīvi	audiverim	audītus sum	audītus sim
audivisti	audiveris	audītus es	audītus sis
audīvit	audiverit	audītus est	audītus sit
audivimus	audiverimus	audīti sumus	audīti simus
audivistis	audiveritis	audīti estis	audīti sitis
audivērunt (re)	audiverint	audīti sunt	audīti sint

Active.		Passive.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
PLUPERFECT.			
audiveram	audivissem	audītus eram	audītus essem
audiveras	audivisses	audītus eras	audītus esses
audiverat	audivisset	audītus erat	audītus esset
audiverāmus	audivissēmus	audīti erāmus	audīti essēmus
audiverātis	audivissētis	audīti erātis	audīti essētis
audiverant	audivissent	audīti erant	audīti essent

FUTURE PERFECT.

audivero	audītus ero
audiveris	audītus eris
audiverit	audītus erit
audiverimus	audīti erimus
audiveritis	audīti eritis
audiverint	audīti erunt

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

2. audi	audīte	audīre	audimini
---------	--------	--------	----------

FUTURE.

2. audīto	auditōte	audītor	—
3. audīto	audiunto	audītor	audiuntor

INFINITIVE.

PRES. audīre	PRES. audīri
PERF. audivisse	PERF. audītus esse
FUT. auditūrus esse	FUT. audītum iri (audītus fore).

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. audiens	PERF. audītus
FUT. auditurus	GER. audiendus

GERUND.

audiendi, -o, -um, -o

SUPINE.

audītum, audītu

13. Deponent Verbs : All Conjugations.

For signification and forms common to both voices, *vid.* XX., 2.

INDICATIVE.

	1.	2.	3.	4.
<i>Pres.</i>	hortor	vereor	sequor	potior
	hortāris (re)	verēris (re)	sequeris (re)	potīris (re)
	hortātur	verētur	sequitur	potitur
	hortāmur	verēmur	sequimur	potimur
	hortamini	veremini	sequimini	potimini
	hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	potiuntur
<i>Imp.</i>	hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
<i>Fut.</i>	hortābor	verēbor	sequar	potiar
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum
<i>Plup.</i>	hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	potītus eram
<i>F. P.</i>	hortātus ero	veritus ero	secūtus ero	potītus ero

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	horter	verear	sequar	potiar
<i>Imp.</i>	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	potīrer
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	potītus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	potītus essem

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	hortāre	verēre	sequere	potīre
<i>Fut.</i>	hortātor	verētor	sequitor	potītor

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	hortāri	verēri	sequi	potīri
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	hortatūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secutūrus esse	potitūrus esse

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i>	hortans	verens	sequens	potiens
<i>Fut.</i>	hortatūrus	veritūrus	secutūrus	potitūrus
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	potītus
<i>G' ve.</i>	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus

VERBAL NOUNS.

<i>GER.</i>	hortandi, etc.	verendi, etc.	sequendi, etc.	potiendi, etc.
<i>SUP.</i>	hortātum, -u	veritum, -u	secūtum, -u	potītum, -u

SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS. *Vid.* Cap. 18, 10.

audeo, audēre, ausus sum, dare ; gaudeo, gaudēre, gavīsus sum, rejoice ; fido, fidere, fīsus sum, trust ; soleo, solēre, solitus sum, be wont.

14. *Periphrastic Conjugations.*FIRST (OR ACTIVE). For formation, *vid* XXV., 1.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	amatūrus sum , I am about to love.	— sim
<i>Imperf.</i>	amatūrus eram , I was about to love.	— essem
<i>Fut.</i>	amatūrus ero , I shall be about to love.	
<i>Perf.</i>	amatūrus fui , I was about, etc.	— fuerim
<i>Plup.</i>	amatūrus fueram , I had been, etc.	— fuissem
<i>Fut. P.</i>	amatūrus fuero , I shall have been, etc.	

INFINITIVE. *Pres.* **amatūrus esse.** *Perf.* **amatūrus fuisse.**

SECOND (OR PASSIVE). For formation XLII., 4.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	amandus sum , I (must) am to be loved.	— sim
<i>Imperf.</i>	amandus eram , I was (had) to be loved.	— essem
<i>Fut.</i>	amandus ero , I shall be (worthy) to be loved.	
<i>Perf.</i>	amandus fui , I was to be loved.	— fuerim
<i>Plup.</i>	amandus fueram , I had been etc.	— fuissem
<i>Fut. P.</i>	amandus fuero , I shall have been etc.	

INFINITIVE. *Pres.* **amandus esse.** *Perf.* **amandus fuisse.**15. *Sum and its Compounds.*

	Pres.	Infin.	Perf.	Fut. Part.
PRINCIPAL PARTS :	sum	esse	fui	futūrus
	INDICATIVE.	PRESENT.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>Sing.</i>	sum , I am.	sim		
	es , thou art (you are).	sis		
	est , he (she, it) is.	sit		
<i>Plur.</i>	sumus , we are.	simus		
	estis , you are.	sitis		
	sunt , they are.	sint		
	IMPERFECT.			
<i>Sing.</i>	eram , I was.	essem		
	eras , you were.	esses		
	erat , he (she, it) was.	esset		
<i>Plur.</i>	erāmus , we were.	essēmus		
	erātis , you were.	essētis		
	erant , they were.	essent		

INDIC.		SUBJ	
		FUTURE.	
<i>Sing.</i>	ero , I shall be.		
	eris , you will be.		
	erit , he will be.		
<i>Plur.</i>	erimus , we shall be.		
	eritis , you will be.		
	erunt , they will be.		
		PERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i>	fui , I was (have been)	fuerim	
	fuisti , you were.	fueris	
	fuit , he was.	fuerit	
<i>Plur.</i>	fuimus , we were.	fuerimus	
	fuistis , you were.	fueritis	
	fuērunt , they were.	fuerint	
		PLUPERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i>	fueram , I had been.	fuissem	
	fueras , you had been.	fuissets	
	fuerat , he had been.	fuisset	
<i>Plur.</i>	fuerāmus , we had been.	fuissemus	
	fuerātis , you had been.	fuissetis	
	fuerant , they had been.	fuisSENT	
		FUTURE PERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i>	fuero , I shall have been.		
	fueris , you will have been.		
	fuerit , he will have been.		
<i>Plur.</i>	fuerimus , we shall have been.		
	fueritis , you will have been.		
	fuerint , they will have been.		
		IMPERATIVE.	
		PRESENT.	
2.	es , be thou.	este , be ye.	
		FUTURE.	
2.	esto , thou shalt be.	estōte , ye shall be.	
3.	esto , he shall be.	sunto , they shall be.	
		INFINITIVE.	
<i>Pres.</i>	esse , to be.		
<i>Perf.</i>	fuisse , to have been.		
<i>Fut.</i>	fore or futūrus esse , to be about to be.		
		F. PART. futūrus, -a, -um, about to be.	

The verb **sum** is defective as well as irregular, having no gerund or supine, and no participle but the future.

COMPOUNDS OF SUM.

Sum is compounded without any change of inflection with the prepositions **ab, ad, de, in, inter, ob, prae, pro, sub, super.**

In the compound **prōsum**, **pro** is followed by **d** before **e**. Thus **prosum, prodes, prodest, prosumus, prodestis, prosunt**, etc. The **d** appears to be merely euphonic, though the preposition may have had the form **prod** originally.

The inflection of **possum** (*I am able, I can*) is here given. **Possum = potsum (potis, able, + sum).** Before **s** the **t** of the adj. is assimilated. It is retained before **e**.

PRIN. PARTS : **possum, posse** (*for pot-esse*), **potui** (*for pot-fui*).

INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
PRESENT.		FUTURE.	
possum, I am able, can.	possim	potero, I shall be able.	
potes, you can.	possis		PERFECT.
potest, he can.	possit	potui, I could.	potuerim
possumus, we can.	possīmus		PLUPERFECT.
potestis, you can.	possītis	potueram	potuissē
possunt, they can.	possint		FUTURE PERFECT.
		potuero	
IMPERFECT.			
poteram, I could.	possem		
	IMPERATIVE —		
INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLE.	
<i>Pres.</i> posse	<i>Perf.</i> potuisse	<i>Pres.</i> potens (used as an adjective), <i>powerful.</i>	

16. IRREGULAR VERBS.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : ACTIVE : **fero, ferre, tuli, latus, bear.**

PASSIVE : **feror, ferri, latus sum.**

Active.		Passive.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
PRESENT.			
<i>Pres.</i> fero	feram	feror	ferar
fers	feras	ferris (re)	ferāris (re)
fert	ferat	fertur	ferātur
ferimus	ferāmus	ferimur	ferāmur
fertis	ferātis	ferimini	feramini
ferunt	ferant	feruntur	ferantur

Active.			Passive.		
INDIC.	SUBJ.		INDIC.	SUBJ.	
<i>Imperf.</i>	ferēbam	ferrem	ferēbar	ferrer	
<i>Fut.</i>	feram		ferar		
<i>Perf.</i>	tuli	tulerim	latus sum	latus sim	
<i>Plup.</i>	tuleram	tulissem	latus eram	latus essem	
<i>F. Perf.</i>	tulero		latus ero		
IMP. <i>Pres.</i>	fer	ferre	ferre	ferimini	
<i>Fut.</i>	ferto	fertōte	fertor	—	
	ferto	ferunto	fertor	feruntor	
INF. <i>Pres.</i>	ferre	<i>Perf.</i> tulisse	<i>Pres.</i> ferri	<i>Perf.</i> latus esse	
<i>Fut.</i>	latūrus esse		<i>Fut.</i> latum iri		
PART. <i>Pres.</i>	ferens	<i>Fut.</i> latūrus	<i>Perf.</i> latus	<i>Ger.</i> ferendus	
GER.	ferendi, etc.	SUP. latum, -u			

Fio (*I am made, become*) is the Passive of **facio**. PRINCIPAL PARTS :
fio, fiēri, factus sum.

	INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>Pres.</i>	fio, fis, fit fimus, fitis, fiunt	fiam, fias, fiat fiāmus, fiatis, fiānt
<i>Imp.</i>	fiēbam, fiēbas, etc.	fierem, fieres, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	fiam, fies, etc.	
<i>Perf.</i>	factus sum	factus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	factus eram	factus essem
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	factus ero	
IMPERAT. <i>Pres.</i>	fi, fite; <i>Fut.</i> fito, fito, fitōte, fiunto	
INFIN. <i>Pres.</i>	fiēri	<i>Perf.</i> factus esse <i>Fut.</i> factum iri
PART. <i>Perf.</i>	factus	<i>Ger.</i> faciendus

Volo and its compounds : **volo, velle, volui, to wish; nolo** (non + volo), **nolle, nolui, to be unwilling; malo** (magis + volo), **malle, malui, to wish rather, prefer; —**

PRESENT.					
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
volo	velim	nolo	nolim	malo	malim
vis	velis	nonvis	nolis	mavis	malis
vult	velit	nonvult	nolit	mavult	malit
volumus	velīmus	nolumus	nolīmus	malumus	malīmus
vultis	velītis	nonvultis	nolītis	mavultis	malītis
volunt	velint	nolunt	nolint	malunt	malint

INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
IMPERFECT.					
volēbam	vellem	nolēbam	nollem	malēbam	mallem
FUTURE.					
volam		nolam		malam	
PERFECT.					
volui	voluerim	nolui	noluerim	malui	maluerim
PLUPERFECT.					
volueram	voluissem	nolueram	noluissem	malueram	maluissem
FUTURE PERFECT.					
voluero		noluero		maluero	
IMPERATIVE.					
<i>Pres.</i> noli, nolite, do not.					
<i>Fut.</i> nolito, nolitōte, thou shalt not, ye shall not.					
nolito, nolunto, he shall not, they shall not.					
INFINITIVE.					
velle	voluisse	nolle	noluisse	malle	maluisse
PARTICIPLES.					
volens, willing.		nolens, unwilling.			

17. DEFECTIVE VERBS.

a. The verbs **coepe** (*I begin*), **odi** (*I hate*), and **memini** (*I remember*) have lost their Present stem and are called *defective*. The following is a synopsis of the tenses formed from the Perfect stem:—

coepe-	}	i, -eram, -ero, -erim, -issem, -isse.
od-		
memin-		

coepe has a fut. part. **coeptūrus** and a perf. part. **coeptus**.

odi has a fut. part. **osūrus** and a perf. part. **osus**.

memini has the pres. impv. **memento -tōte**, and the pres. part. **meminens**.

b. In **odi** and **memini** the perf., plup., and fut. perf. have the meaning of the pres., imperf., and fut.; that is, they are *preteritive* verbs.

Novi, *I know*, and **consuevi** (**consuesco**), *I am wont*, are also preteritive verbs.

18. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Impersonal verbs have no personal subject. They appear only in the third person of the indicative and subjunctive, and in the infinitive and gerund. They are : —

a. Verbs expressing the operations of nature and the time of day ; as, **pluit**, *it rains* ; **ningit**, *it snows* ; **vesperascit**, *it grows late*.

b. Verbs of *feeling*, where the subject of the feeling becomes the object as affected by it ; as, **miseret**, *it grieves* ; **pudet**, *it shames*.

c. Verbs which have a phrase or clause as their subject ; as, **accidit**, *fit*, *it happens* ; **libet**, *it pleases* ; **restat**, *it remains*, etc.

SYNOPSIS OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

1. <i>it is plain.</i>	2. <i>it is allowed.</i>	3. <i>it chances.</i>	4. <i>it results.</i>
constat	licet	accidit	evenit
constābat	licēbat	accidēbat	eveniēbat
constābit	licēbit	accidet	eveniet
constitit	licuit	accidit	evēnit
constiterat	licuerat	acciderat	evenerat
constiterit	licuerit	acciderit	evenerit
constet	liceat	accidat	eveniat
constāret	licēret	accideret	eveniret
constiterit	licuerit	acciderit	evenerit
constitisset	licuisset	accidisset	evenisset
constāre	licēre	accidere	evenire
constitisse	licuisse	accidisse	evenisse
-statūrum esse	licitūrum esse	—	eventūrum esse

19. I. GENDER.

a. The names of male beings, rivers, winds, and mountains are *masculine*.

b. The names of female beings, countries, towns, islands, plants, trees, and of most abstract qualities are *feminine*.

c. Indeclinable nouns, infinitives, phrases, clauses used as nouns, and any terms used as indeclinable nouns are *neuter*.

d. For gender of nouns of the First Declension, *vid.* V., 1 ; Second Declension, VI., 1 ; Fourth Declension, XXIII., 1 ; Fifth Declension, XV., 1.

e. Third Declension.

Masculine endings (of the Nom. Sing.) are **-o, -or, -os, -er, -es** (*gen. -idis, -itis*).

Feminine endings are: **-as** (*gen. -atis*), **-es** (*gen. -is*), **-is, -ys, -x, -s** (following a consonant), **-do, -go** (*gen. -inis*), **-io, -us** (*gen. -udis, -utis*).

Neuter endings are: **-a, -e, -i, -y, -c, -l, -t, -men, -ar, -ur, -us** (*gen. -eris, -oris*).

CASES.

It is not intended here to furnish an exhaustive treatment of this subject, but only to state and illustrate the uses of cases occurring in the text embraced in this book.

For the general use of the cases *vid.* III. Rem.

19. II. *The Nominative Case.* (Casus Nominatīvus.)

The Nominative, as in English, is the case of the subject, the appositive of the subject, or the predicate nominative; e. g. **Gallia est divisa**; **Labiēnus, legātus**, *Labiēnus, the lieutenant*; **Dumnorix vir audacissimus fuit**, *Dumnorix was a very bold man*.

20. *The Genitive Case.* (Casus Genetīvus.)a. *The Genitive with Adjectives.* (Genetīvus cum Adjectivis.)

Adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, skill, memory, sharing, guilt, fulness, mastery, and their opposites; verbals in **-ax** and present participles used as adjectives, take the Genitive; e. g. **cupidum rērum novārum**, *desirous of a revolution*; **gloriae memor**, *mindful of glory*; **ratiōnis particeps**, *endowed with reason*; **militāris rei perītus**, *skilled in military science*; **tenax propositi**, *steadfast in purpose*.

Rem. Excepting appositives, any noun used to limit or define another, is put in the genitive.

b. *Objective Genitive.* (Genetīvus Objectivus.)

Nouns denoting action, agency, and feeling take the Genitive of the object toward which the action or feeling is directed; e. g. **reditiōnis spe sublāta**, *when the hope of a return was taken away*; **conjurandi**

has causas esse; (they said that) *these were the reasons for (of) conspiring.*

c. Subjective Genitive. (Genetivus Subjectivus.)

The subject from which the action or feeling proceeds is put in the Genitive; e. g. **serpentis morsus**, *the bite of the serpent*; **Dei amor**, *the love of God*, i. e. the love felt by Him. **Dei amor**, *love for God*, illustrates the Objective Genitive.

NOTE. In a more general sense the constructions under *c* and *f* are called subjective genitives. A. 214.

d. Partitive Genitive. (Genetivus Partitivus.)

With any word denoting a part, substantives, comparatives, numerals, superlatives, etc., the Genitive may be used in indicating the whole of which the part is taken; e. g., **quarum unam**, Cap. 1; **eam partem Oceani**, Cap. 1; **nobilissimos civitātis**, Cap. 7; **tantum spatii**, *so much (of) space*; **major fratrum**, *the elder of the brothers.*

e. Possessive Genitive. (Genetivus Possessiōnis.)

The Genitive is used to indicate the author or possessor; e. g. **in eōrum finibus**, Cap. 1; **fines Sequanōrum**, Cap. 11; **auctoritāte Orgetorigis permōti**, Cap. 3; **extremum oppidum Allobrogum**, Cap. 6.

f. Genitive of Description or Quality. (Genetivus Descriptiōnis.)

A limiting noun used to denote quality may be put in the Genitive when modified by an adjective; e. g. **vir summae virtūtis**, *a man of the highest courage.* (Cf. abl. of quality.) This construction includes expressions of quantity, indefinite value, and measure of distance; e. g. **tanti ejus apud se gratiam esse ostendit**, Cap. 20, *he shows that his influence with him is so great*; **parvi pretii**, *of little value*; **murus sedecim pedum**, *a wall of sixteen feet.*

g. Genitive with Verbs. (Genetivus cum Verbis.)

Verbs meaning to forget, remember, pity, concern, commonly take the Genitive. Some verbs are followed by the Accusative and Genitive; e. g. **reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romāni et pristinae virtūtis Helvetiōrum**, Cap. 3, *let him remember, etc.*; **verbi oblītus sum**, *I have forgotten the word*; **arguit me furti**, *he accuses me of theft*; **egestātis eum admonēbat**, *he reminded him of his poverty.*

21. *The Dative Case.* (Causus Datīvus.)

a. The Dative of Agent (Datīvus Agentis) is used with the future passive participle (gerundive) and the compound tenses of passive verbs; e. g. **Caesar non exspectandum sibi statuit** (Cap. 11), *Caesar determined that he ought not to wait* (lit. *that it ought not to be awaited by himself*; **omnia Caesari agenda erant**, *all things had to be done by Caesar*).

b. The Dative with Adjectives (Datīvus cum Adjectivis) shows the object to which the quality is directed; e. g. **locus castris idoneus**, *a place suitable for a camp*; **classi utile**, *useful for the class*; **proximique sunt Germānis**, Cap. 1.

c. The Dative with Compound Verbs. (Datīvus cum Verbis Compositis.)

The Dative (as an Indirect Object) is used with verbs compounded with the prepositions, **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, pro, sub, super**, and sometimes with **ab, circum, de, and ex**. The adverbs **satis, bene, and male** also take the Dative in composition; e. g., **cum virtūte omnibus praestārent**, Cap. 2; **et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre posset**, Cap. 2; **hoc Caesari defuit**, *this failed Caesar*; **ei munitioni . . . T. Labiēnum legātum praefēcit**, Cap. 10; **Aeduis libertātem sint ereptūri**, *they would take away liberty from the Aeduians*; **si Allobrogibus satisfaciant**, Cap. 14.

d. The Dative of the Indirect Object. (Datīvus Objecti Indirecti.)

The Dative of the Indirect Object shows to or for whom or which anything is or is done. This includes many verbs which in English are followed by a direct object; e. g. verbs meaning to *benefit, injure, command, obey, serve, resist, please, displease, persuade, pardon*, and in general any verb whose action affects indirectly the interests of its object; e. g. **et civitāti persuasit**, Cap. 2; **ut ejus voluntāte id sibi facere liceat**, Cap. 7; **legātis respondit**, Cap. 7; **Caesari renuntiatur**, Cap. 10; **huic legioni Caesar confidēbat**, *Caesar trusted in this legion*; **tibi parcam**, *I will spare you*.

e. The Dative with Nouns and Adverbs. (Datīvus cum Nominibus et Adverbiis.)

The Dative follows some nouns and adverbs formed from verbs and adjectives which take the Dative; e. g. **legibus obtemperatio**, *obedience to the laws*; **proxime castris**, *very near the camp*.

f. The Dative of Purpose or End. (Datīvus Finis.)

The Dative showing the purpose *for which* is often used with another dative showing the person or thing affected; e. g. **Gallis magno ad pugnam erat impedimento**, Cap. 25, *it was (for) a great hindrance to the Gauls in battle*; **funditōres Baleāres subsidio oppidanis mittit**, *he sends the Balearic slingers as an aid to the townsmen*.

g. The Dative of Possession. (Datīvus Possessiōnis.)

The possessor is often denoted by the Dative with the verb **sum**; e. g. **mihi liber est**, *I have a book*; **homini cum Deo similitūdo est**, *man has a likeness to God*.

h. The Dative of Reference. (Datīvus Relatiōnis.)

The Dative is often required, not by any single word, but by the general meaning of the clause or sentence; e. g. **si sibi purgāti esse vellent**, Cap. 28, 2.

22. The Accusative Case. (Causus Accusativus.)**a. The Accusative of Place or Limit. (Accusatīvus Terminālis.)**

The place (or person) *to which* is generally designated by the Accusative with the prepositions **ad** or **in**, but names of towns or small islands and the nouns **domus** and **rus** omit the preposition; e. g. **minimeque ad eos mercatōres saepe commeant**; **ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit**, Cap. 1; **domum reditiōnis spe sublāta**, Cap. 5; **Romam eo**, *I am going to Rome*.

b. Accusative of the Direct Object. (Accusatīvus Objecti Directi.)

The Accusative of the Direct Object is used with transitive verbs to denote that which is directly affected, or is caused or produced by the action of the verb; e. g. **Helvetii reliquos Gallos virtūte praecēdunt**; **is sibi legatiōnem ad civitatē suscepit**, Cap. 3; **Ancum regem populus creāvit**, *the people elected Ancus king*; **me sententiam rogāvit**, *he asked me my opinion*. Here belong verbs of *making*, *choosing*, and *asking*, *teaching*, which take two objects, as in the last two examples.

c. Accusative of Specification. (Accusatīvus Respectus.)

The Accusative of Specification (also called Greek or Adverbial Accusative) shows the part affected or the limit of the action, or that in refer-

ence to which the act takes place; e. g. **eam partem nos locus admonuit**, *in reference to this thing the place has warned us*; **capita velāmur**, *we have our heads veiled* (we are veiled in respect to our heads). Here may be classed such adverbial phrases as: **maximam partem**, *for the most part*; **quod si**, *but (as to which) if*; **quid dicam?** *why should I speak?* Cf. the Abl. of Specification.

d. Accusative of Extent of Space. (Accusatīvus Spatii.)

The Accusative is used to denote the *extent of space*; e. g. **milia passuum decem novem murum . . . perducit**, Cap. 8; **qui in longitudinem milia passuum CCXL., in latitudinem CLXXX. patēbant**, Cap. 2; **nix quattuor pedes alta**, *snow four feet deep*.

NOTE. — Occasionally the genitive of quality is used instead of this constr.; cf. also the abl. denoting measure of difference.

e. Accusative of Time. (Accusatīvus Temporis.)

The Accusative is used to denote time *how long*; e. g. **cujus pater regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat**, Cap. 3; **septem horas pugnāvērunt**. Cf. the Abl. of Time.

f. Accusative with Infinitive. (Accusatīvus cum Infinitivo.)

The Accusative is regularly used as the subject of the Infinitive.

23. The Vocative Case. (Caus Vocatīvus.)

The Vocative is regularly the Case of direct address, but the Nominative is often used instead; e. g. **serve, audi, slave, listen**; **audi tu, populus Albānus**, *hear thou, people of Alba*.

24. The Ablative Case. (Caus Ablatīvus.)

a. The Ablative Absolute. (Ablatīvus Absolutus.)

A noun and participle, used parenthetically in explanation, are regularly put in the Ablative. A noun or an adjective may take the place of the participle; e. g. **M. Messāla et M. Pisōne Consulibus**; **oppidis suis vicisque exustis**, Cap. 5; **omnibus rebus ad profectiōnem comparātis**; **se invito**; **eo deprecatōre**.

b. Ablative of Agent. (Ablatīvus Agentis.)

The agent or author of an action is designated by the Ablative with **a** or **ab**; e. g. **Divico respondit: ita Helvetios a majoribus institutos esse**, Cap. 14, *thus the Helvetians had been trained by their ancestors*; **ab eisdem**, Cap. 18, *by the same (persons)*. Cf. the Dat. of Agent.

c. Ablative of Cause. (Ablatīvus Causae.)

Cause is expressed by the Ablative, generally without a preposition; e. g. **sua victoria gloriarentur**, Cap. 14, *they boasted (because) of their own victory*; **hujus potentiae causa**, *for the sake of this power*; **qua de causa**, Cap. 1.

d. Ablative of Accompaniment. (Ablatīvus Comitātus.)

Accompaniment is regularly denoted by the Ablative with the preposition **cum**. The preposition is often omitted in military expressions; e. g. **cum Germānis contendunt**; **ea legiōne quam secum habēbat**, *with that legion*, etc.

e. Ablative of Comparison. (Ablatīvus Comparatiōnis.)

The comparative degree is followed by the Ablative unless **quam** is used. With **quam** the objects compared are in the same case; e. g. **non longius mille et quingentis passibus**, Cap. 22; **quid est melius bonitāte?** *what is better than goodness?* **callidior es quam hic**, *you are shrewder than he*.

f. Ablative of Difference. (Ablatīvus Distantiae.)

The Ablative is employed to express the degree of difference after Comparatives and words implying comparison; e. g. **biduo me antecessit** (Cic.), *he preceded me by two days*; **mille passibus longius**, *a mile farther, farther by a mile*.

g. Ablative of Instrument and Means. (Ablatīvus Instrumenti.)

The means or instrument of an action are expressed by the Ablative; e. g. **ut igni cremarētur**; **quibus itineribus domo exire possent**, Cap. 6.

h. Ablative of Place. (Ablatīvus Loci.)

The place *in which (where)* is regularly denoted by **in** with the Ablative. Names of towns, small islands, and a few common nouns, denote the place *where* by the Locative (without any preposition); e. g. **quae civitas est in provincia**, Cap. 10; **quae in conventu dixerat**, Cap. 18; *what he had said in the assembly*; **Athenis**, *at Athens*; **domi**, *at home*.

i. **Ablative of Manner.** (**Ablatīvus Modi**.)

The Ablative, commonly with **cum** or an adjective, or both (but frequently without a preposition), is employed to denote the manner of an action ; e. g. **cum virtūte vixit** (Cic.), *he lived virtuously* ; **gladiis destructis**, Cap. 25 ; *with drawn swords* ; **magno dolōre afficiebantur** ; **quanto cum periculo id fecerit**, *with how great risk he did this* ; **avis more**, *like a bird, in the manner of a bird*.

NOTE. Here belongs the Ablative in such expressions as, *in accordance with*, e. g. **more populi Romāni**, *in accordance with the custom of the Roman people*.

j. **Ablative of Origin and Source.** (**Ablatīvus Originis**.)

Source or Origin, and the material of which anything consists is expressed by the Ablative. Sometimes a preposition, **de**, **e**, or **ex** is employed ; e. g. **Jove natus**, *son of Jove, descended from Jove* ; **pocula ex auro**, *cups of gold*.

NOTE. Source and material may also be expressed by the Genitive.

k. **Ablative of Price.** (**Ablatīvus Pretii**.)

The price of an object is regularly denoted by the Ablative except in expressions of *indefinite value*, where the Genitive is employed ; e. g. **vendit auro patriam**, *he sold his country for gold* ; **magno vendidit**, *he sold at a high price* ; **parvo pretio**.

l. **Ablative of Quality or Description.** (**Ablatīvus Qualitātis**.)

The Ablative, with an adjective or limiting Genitive, is used to denote quality ; e. g. **Dumnorix summa audacia**, Cap. 18, *Dumnorix of the greatest boldness* ; **homines inimico animo**, *men of hostile mind*.

m. **Ablative of Specification.** (**Ablatīvus Respectus**.)

The Ablative is used to show *in what respect* a statement is true ; e. g. **hi omnes lingua, institūtis, legibus inter se differunt** ; **Helvetii reliquos Gallos virtūte praeceunt** ; **rex nomine**, *a king in name*.

n. **Ablative of Separation.** (**Ablatīvus Separatiōnis**.)

The Ablative, with or without a preposition, is employed with words denoting *separation* or *privation* ; e. g. **Gallos ab Aquitānis Garumna flumen dividit** ; **suis finibus eos prohibent** ; **ut de finibus suis . . . exīrent** ; **hoc conātu destitērunt** ; **aberrās a proposito**, *you are wandering from the point*.

o. **Ablative in Special Constructions.** (**Ablatīvus Speciālis.**)

The Ablative (of Means or Instrument) is used with the deponent verbs **utor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, **vescor**, and several of their compounds; e. g. **totius Galliae imperio potiri**, *Cap. 2*; **eodem usi consilio**, *having used the same plan.*

The Ablative is used with **dignus**, **indignus**; e. g. **digni sunt amicitia**, *they are worthy of friendship*; also with **contentus**, **fretus**, and **laetus**; e. g. **amicis fretus sum**, *I am relying upon my friends.*

p. **Ablative of Time.** (**Ablatīvus Temporis.**)

The Ablative is employed to designate time *when or within which*; e. g., **qui eo tempore principatum in civitate obtinebat**; **uno die**, *in one day.* Cf. the Accusative of Time.

q. **The Locative Case.** (**Casus Locatīvus.**)

The Locative has (*a*) the same form as the Genitive in the singular number of the first and second declensions, and (*b*) the form of the Dative or Ablative in the third declension and in the plural of all declensions. It occurs only with the names of towns and small islands, **domus**, **rus**, **humus**, and a few other nouns. The term Locative Ablative is often employed to designate the cases under (*b*); e. g. **domi**, *at home*, **Romae**, *at Rome*; **Philippis**, *at Philippi*; **Rhodi**, *at Rhodes*; **ruri**, *in the country.*

25. SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

a. The tenses of the verb are distinguished as:

I. Principal Tenses: i. e. those denoting present or future time, the Present, Perfect, *with have*, Future, and Future Perfect.

II. Historical Tenses: i. e. those denoting past time, the Imperfect, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Historical Infinitive.

b. In subordinate clauses, the use of tenses follows the rule:

Principal tenses follow principal tenses, and historical tenses follow historical tenses: e. g. *he sends that he may learn*, **mittit ut discat**; *he was sending that he might learn*, **mittēbat ut disceret**; *he will send that he may learn*, **mittet ut discat**; *he sent that he might learn*, **misit ut disceret**; *he has sent (perf. def.) that he may (might) learn*, **misit ut discat (disceret)**; ¹ *he had sent that he might learn*; **miserat ut disceret.**

¹ The perf. def. is sometimes followed by a historical tense.

26. THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

I. *The Subjunctive in Independent Sentences.*

1. POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

The Subjunctive is used in statements, not as to what *is* but as to what *might be* or *should be*; e. g. **dicam**, *I should say*.

2. DUBITATIVE OR RHETORICAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

The Subjunctive is used in questions, not as to what *is*, but as to what *might be*, or *should be*. Such questions either imply doubt (dubitative), as **quid agam?** *what can I do?* or are asked for effect (rhetorical), being in reality strong statements; e. g. **Hoc faciam?** **Minime.** *Can I do this? By no means.*

3. HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE.

The Subjunctive is used in commands and exhortations; e. g. **obsides dentur**, *let hostages be given*; **eāmus**, *let us go*.

Negative commands (prohibitions) addressed to a particular person or persons are regularly expressed, in classic Latin prose, in one of three ways:

a. by **ne** with the Perfect Subjunctive; e. g. **ne id feceris**, *don't do this*.

b. by **noli**, or **nolite**, with Complementary Infinitive; e. g. **noli id facere**.

c. by **cave**, or **cavete**, with the Present Subjunctive; e. g. **cave (ne) id facias**.

But **ne** is followed by the Present Subjunctive if the prohibition is general.

4. OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

The Subjunctive is used with **utinam**, **O si**, to express a wish or desire, — the present for desires relating to future time, the imperfect for desires unfulfilled in present time, the pluperfect for desires unfulfilled in past time; e. g. **utinam mei cives beāti sint**, *may my fellow-citizens be prosperous!* **O si Caesar adesset!** *would that Caesar were here!* **O si Caesar adfuisset!** *would that Caesar had been here!*

II. *The Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses.*

1. FINAL (PURPOSE) CLAUSES.

a. **Ut** denoting purpose is followed by the Subjunctive; negative purpose is introduced by **ne**, very rarely by **ut ne**.

b. A relative pronoun or adverb is followed by the Subjunctive of purpose when the relative is equivalent to **ut** with a demonstrative, denoting purpose; e. g. **misit exploratōres qui (ut ii) vidērent**, etc.

c. **Quo** (= **ut eo**) rather than **ut** introduces a purpose clause, whenever that clause contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree; e. g. **montem ascendit quo (ut eo) facilius vidēret**.

2. CONSECUTIVE (RESULT) CLAUSES.

a. **Ut** denoting result is followed by the Subjunctive; negative result is introduced by **ut non**, never by **ne**.

b. A relative pronoun or adverb is followed by the Subjunctive when the relative is equivalent to **ut** with a demonstrative denoting result; e. g. **idoneus est, qui (ut is) mittātur**; **sunt qui (tales ut) mentiantur**. Relative clauses of result usually denote some characteristic of the antecedent, and are therefore called clauses of *characteristic and result*.

c. After words of doubt and hindrance, and general negative expressions, result clauses are introduced by **quin** (**qui non**) and **quominus** (**quo** = [**ut eo**] **minus**); e. g. **nulla fuit civitas quin mitteret**, *there was no state which did not send*; **interclūdor quominus plura dicam**, *I am prevented from saying more*.

3. CAUSAL CLAUSES.

a. Causal clauses (introduced by **quod**, **quia**, **quoniam**, **quando**) take the Indicative when the cause is given on the authority of the writer or speaker; the Subjunctive is used when the writer or speaker gives the cause on the authority of another; e. g. **Socrates accusātus est quod iuventūtem corrumperet**, *Socrates was accused because (as they said) he corrupted the youth*.

b. A relative pronoun or adverb introduces a causal clause, when the relative is equivalent to a causal conjunction with a demonstrative pronoun; e. g. **fortis puer qui (cum is) se defendat**, *brave boy, since he defends himself*.

c. **Cum** causal is followed by the Subjunctive (the *causal clause of situation*); e. g. **quae cum ita sint**, *since these things are so*.

4. CONCESSIVE (ALTHOUGH) CLAUSES.

Concessive clauses are introduced by the conjunctions **quamvis**, **quamlibet**, **licet**, **etsi**, **ut**, **cum**, and **quamquam**. **Quamquam** regularly takes the Indicative, the others take the Subjunctive.

Quamvis and **quamlibet** are compounds of **quam** and **vis** (**volo**) and **libet** (impersonal verb). **Licet** is the imp. verb. **Etsi** (**et** + **si** = *even if*), in effect, introduces a conditional clause; it will be followed by the Indicative wherever **si** would take that mode. **Cum** concessive is followed by the Subjunctive (the *concessive clause of situation*; vide 5, a, Rem.).

5. TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

a. Clauses with **cum** take the Indicative if they merely define the *time* at which the main act or event took place; they require the Subjunctive if they express the *situation* in which the main act or event took place.

REMARK. **Cum** (at an earlier time **quom**) is a relative, differing originally from **qui** only in being restricted to an antecedent denoting the idea of *time*. This antecedent is some phrase like **id tempus**, **eo tempore**, **tum**, etc., expressed or implied.

The Subjunctive thus used is, in fact, a *characterizing Subjunctive* (vid. 2, b.). Thus it gives the *character of the time at which* the main act or event took place, or briefly the *situation*.

The situation in which an act takes place must, in the majority of cases, necessarily operate as contributing to cause that act or to prevent it. Hence the idea of cause or concession, which originally does not belong to the clause, becomes associated with it (causal or concessive clause of *situation*).

b. **Postquam**, **ut**, **ubi**, and **simul atque** are regularly used with the historical perfect or present indicative, in narration; **antequam** and **priusquam** introduce statements of *fact* in the Indicative, or of acts *foreseen* and naturally *expected* in the Subjunctive.

c. **Dum**, **donec**, and **quoad** (*while*, *until*) take the Subjunctive if they imply *purpose*, *doubt*, or *futurity*; otherwise they are followed by the Indicative.

REMARK. The pupil should become familiar with the uses of **cum**, in order that he may recognize the force of the word *at sight*. If it is followed immediately by an ablative, it may almost always be inferred that **cum** is the preposition *with*. If it stands at the beginning of a clause and no ablative follows it, **cum** is a conjunction; as such it may define the time of the main clause and take the Indicative, or it may express the situation, either with or without ideas of cause or concession, and take the Subjunctive.

6. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

a. A conditional sentence consists of two clauses: the *condition* (protasis) and the *conclusion* (apodosis); e. g. **si vales**, **bene est**, *if you are in good health* (protasis), *it is well* (apodosis).

b. Conditional sentences may be divided into three classes, according as they express present, past, or future time. Each of these may be divided into two classes, according as they require the Indicative or the Subjunctive.

c. Conditional sentences relating to present or past time, and *implying nothing as to the truth* of the supposition (simple supposition), require the Indicative (present or past) in both clauses; e. g. **si Caesar adest, salvi sumus**, *if Caesar is here, we are safe*; **si Caesar aderat, salvi fuērunt**, *if Caesar was present, they were safe*. If present or past conditions imply that the supposition is *contrary to fact*, they require the Subjunctive (Imperfect or Pluperfect) in both clauses; e. g. (present time), **si valēres, bene esset**, *if you were in good health (as you are not) it would be well*; **si adfuisset, salvi fuissēmus**, *if he had been present (but he was not) we should have been safe*.

d. Conditional sentences relating to future time, and implying that the fulfilment of the supposition is *probable* (vivid supposition), require the Future Indicative in both clauses; e. g. **si aderis, gaudēbo**, *if you will be present, I shall be glad*. If it is implied that the fulfilment of the supposition is *improbable* (less vivid supposition), the Present Subjunctive is used in both clauses; e. g., **si venias, gaudeam**, *if you should come, I should be glad*.

REMARK 1. It will thus be seen that all simple or vivid conditions require the Indicative, and that conditions contrary to fact or less vivid require the Subjunctive. This may be shown as follows:—

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

<i>Present</i>	{ Simple	Present Indicative.
	{ Contrary to fact	Imperf. Subjunctive.
<i>Past</i>	{ Simple	Past (Imperf. or Perfect) Indicative.
	{ Contrary to fact	Pluperf. Subjunctive.
<i>Future</i>	{ Vivid	Future Indicative.
	{ Less vivid	Present Subjunctive.

REMARK 2. In a vivid future condition, if the act or event mentioned in the protasis is thought of as *completed before that of the conclusion begins*, the Future Perfect Indicative will, of course, be used, instead of the simple Future. The same relation will be expressed in a less vivid future condition by the Perfect Subjunctive. Whenever a conditional sentence of this form is changed from *direct* to *indirect discourse*, the Future Perfect Indicative will be changed to the Perfect Subjunctive.

e. GENERAL CONDITIONS.

1. General conditions relate either to the act of an *indefinite subject* (e. g. unless you [*any one*] exercise the mind, it becomes feeble) or to the *customary* or *repeated* act of a definite subject; e. g. if the soldiers were disobedient (whenever it happened) the general punished them.

2. The general conclusion is expressed by the Indicative; the condition is likewise (in regular Ciceronian Latin) in the Indicative, except when its subject is the indefinite second person singular (*you = any one*); in that

case the Subjunctive is used; e. g. **memoria minuitur, nisi eam exerceas; si quod erat grande vas et maius opus inventum, laeti adferebant.** (Cic. Verr. IV. 21, 47.)

f. Dum, modo, dummodo (*if only, provided that*) are followed by the Subjunctive.

7. SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION.

When a sentence or clause has its verb in the Subjunctive, all clauses subordinate to it regularly take the Subjunctive, being attracted into the mode of the leading verb. This principle is often disregarded when the subordinate verb expresses the notion of fact or certainty.

8. INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

a. A direct question is a question directly asked; e. g. **quot annos natus es?** *how many years have you been born (how old are you)?* An indirect question is a question that has been incorporated in another sentence, its original structure being so changed, to fit the new sentence, that the question form is lost; e. g. **quaesivit quot annos natus essem;** *he asked how old I was (how many years I had been born).*

b. Indirect questions require the Subjunctive.

27. Indirect Discourse. (Oratio Oblīqua.) Vid. L.

a. A direct quotation repeats precisely the words of the original speaker or writer; e. g. **puer dicit, "eo Romam,"** *the boy says, "I am going to Rome."* An indirect quotation repeats the thought of the original writer or speaker, but alters the language to suit the structure of the reporter's sentence; e. g. **puer dicit se ire Romam,** *the boy says that he is going to Rome.*

b. An indirect quotation is thus seen to be the direct object of some verb of *saying*. *He says that he is going.* The same grammatical construction follows verbs of *thinking, perceiving, knowing*, and the like. The name, "Indirect Discourse" is therefore given to this construction whether it is the object of a verb of *saying* or not.

c. USE OF MODES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

In Indirect Discourse a declarative clause has its subject in the Accusative and its verb in the Infinitive. In translating into English supply the declarative conjunction "that" and translate by the nominative and the finite verb; e. g. **(dixit) se scire illa esse,** *he said that he knew these things were true.* Imperative, interrogative, and subordinate clauses have the Subjunctive; e. g. **his Caesar ita respondit: eo sibi minus dubitātiōnis dari, quod eas res, quas legāti Helvetii commemorassent, memoria tēnēret**

d. USE OF TENSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

1. The Infinitive Clause will take the Present, Perfect, or Future Infinitive, according as the time denoted is present, past, or future, in relation to the verb of saying (or thinking, etc.).

2. Subjunctive clauses have their tenses determined by the law of Sequence of Tenses (25) and depend upon the verb of saying. If, however, the perfect infinitive occurs in the declarative clause, the subordinate verb is in the imperfect tense, even though the verb of saying is present; e. g. *He says that Caesar sent in order that he might see, dicit Caesarem misisse, ut vidēret.* Here *vidēret* seems to be attracted into a past tense by *misisse*. (See examples, Lesson L.)

28. THE INFINITIVE.

Subject.

a. The Infinitive, either with or without a subject accusative, may be the subject of a verb; e. g., *hominem mentīri turpe est, for a man to lie is disgraceful.*

Used thus, the Infinitive is a substantive, and may, like any substantive, stand also in apposition with the subject of a sentence, or be used as a predicate noun.

Object.

b. The Infinitive with subject accusative may be used as Object with verbs of *perceiving, knowing, saying*, etc. (*verba sentiendi et declarandi*). This construction gives the Indirect Discourse (27).

Complementary.

c. Many verbs, such as *possum (I am able), audeo (I dare), coepi (I begin)*, require an Infinitive to complete their meaning. The Infinitive so used is called the Complementary (completing) Infinitive.

Historical.

d. The Infinitive is often used in narration with subject nominative, where it is to be translated like the Imp. Indicative. Used thus, it is called the Historical Infinitive.

This may be explained as a complementary Inf. depending on some verb easily supplied from the connection.

29. GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

Vid. XXI., 1, 2.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

IN this vocabulary gender is marked only when there are exceptions to rules given in the Lessons or Appendix 19, 1.

In compound words prefixes are separated by a hyphen. The definitions given will enable the student to easily determine whether the prefix **in-** is the negative particle or the preposition meaning *on, against, over*, etc.

The declension can be distinguished by the termination of the genitive singular, and this is omitted in classes of nouns of frequent occurrence, like those ending in **-tas, -io**. The hyphen employed before endings in the vocabularies is here omitted as unnecessary. The figures 1, 2, 4, placed after the first form of a verb indicate that the principal parts are formed just as in the model verbs **amo, moneo, audio**. When a figure does not thus indicate the verb to be regular and all the principal parts are not given, it will be understood that those not given are rarely if ever found. The perfect passive participle, and not the supine, is employed as the last of the principal parts because the formation of the compound tenses of the passive voice is thus more easily explained, and also because, as has been shown, in a large proportion of Latin verbs, no supine is found. Figures placed after the definitions indicate the lesson or chapter where the word is more fully treated. The lessons are indicated by Roman and the chapters by Arabic characters. The mastery of words given as they occur in the preceding lessons should make frequent reference to this vocabulary unnecessary.

For abbreviations see page 16.

A.

a, ab, praep. c. abl., from, by.

ab-dō, ere, didi, ditus, put away, withdraw, hide.

ab-dūco, ere, duxi, ductus, lead away.

abs-tineo, ēre, tinui, tentus (teneo), hold from, keep from.

ab-sum, esse, fui, be away or distant.

ac = atque; **ac** is used only before consonants.

ac-cēdo, ere, cessi, cessus, go to, approach, be added.

ac-cido, ere, cidi (cado, fall), fall to or upon, befall, happen.

ac-cipio, ere, cēpi, ceptus (capiō), take to, receive, accept.

ac-curro, ere, curri rel cucurri, cursus, run or hasten to, run up.

ac-cūso (causa) (1), call to account, reprimand, accuse.

acies, ēi (acer, sharp), a sharp edge, a keen glance, line of battle, battle array.

acriter, sharply.

ad, praep. c. acc., to, toward, against, near.

ad-dūco, ere, duxi, ductus, lead or bring to, influence.

ad-gredior, *vid. aggredior*.

ad-hibeo, **ēre**, **ui**, **itus** (**habeo**), hold to, bring in, summon, employ.

ad-mīror (1), wonder at, admire.

ad-mitto, **ere**, **mīsi**, **missus**, send to, let in, let go, allow.

ad-orior, **orīri**, **ortus**, rise against, attack.

ad-scisco, **ere**, **scīvi**, **scītus**, take to, receive, adopt.

ad-sum, **esse**, **fui**, be at hand or near, be present, assist.

ad-ventus, **us** (**venio**), a coming to, arrival, approach.

ad-versus, **a**, **um** (*perf. pass. part. of verto*), turned to, over against, opposite, unfavorable.

ad-verto, **ere**, **verti**, **versus**, turn to or towards.

aedificium, **i** (**aedes**, a dwelling), a building.

Aeduus, **i**, an Aeduan.

aegerrime (**aegerrume**), *adv., sup. of aegre*, with the greatest difficulty.

aequo (1), make even or equal.

af-ficio, **ere**, **fēci**, **fectus** (**facio**), do something to, treat, affect.

af-finitas (**fines**), nearness, alliance by marriage, affinity.

ager, **agri**, field, territory.

ag-gredior, **gredi**, **gressus sum** (**ad + gradior**, to step), go to, approach, attack.

agmen, **inis** (**ago**), that which is put in motion, an army on the march, line (of march).

ago, **ere**, **egi**, **actus**, put in motion, drive, do, discuss.

aliēnus, **a**, **um** (**alius**), another's, foreign, unfavorable.

aliqui, **qua**, **quod**, some, any.

alius, **a**, **ud**, *adj. or pron.*, another, other (of any number).

alo, **ere**, **alui**, **alitus** or **altus**, nourish, sustain.

Alpes, **ium** (rarely **Alpis**), *f.*, the Alps.

alter, **era**, **erum**, one (of two), the other.

altitūdo (**altus**), height, depth.

altus, **a**, **um**, high, deep.

amicitia, **ae** (**amīcus**), friendship.

amīcus, **i**, friend.

a-mitto, **ere**, **mīsi**, **missus**, send away, let go, lose.

amor, **ōris** (**amo**), love, desire.

amplus, **a**, **um**, large or full (all round), ample.

anceps, **capitis** (**ambo**, both + **caput**, head), two-headed, two-fold, doubtful.

angustiae, **ārum** (**ango**, squeeze), narrowness, a narrow pass or defile.

angustus, **a**, **um** (**ango**), narrow.

animadverto, **ere**, **ti**, **sus** (**animus + ad + verto**), turn the mind to, attend to, punish. 19.

animus, **i**, soul, mind, feeling, spirit, courage.

annus, **i**, a year.

annuus, **a**, **um**, for a year, annual.

ante, *adv. aut praep. c. acc.*, before.

antea, *adv.* formerly.

antiquus, **a**, **um** (**ante**), ancient, former.

aperio, **īre**, **ui**, **tus**, uncover, open, disclose.

appello (1), call (by name), address.

Aprilis, is, m., Aprilis, e (aperio),

April.

apud, praep. c. acc., among, near, with.

Aquitāni, ōrum, the Aquitani, Aquitanians.

Aquitania, ae, Aquitania.

Arar, Araris. the Saône (a Gallic river).

arbitror (1), (arbiter, a judge), decide, think.

arma, ōrum, armor, arms.

ascendo, ere, scendi, scensus (ad + scando, *climb*), climb up, ascend.

ascensus (ads-), us, a climbing up, ascent.

atque (ac), and also, and. **28, 16.**

attingo, ere, tigi, tactus (ad + tango, *touch*), touch or border upon, lie near to, reach.

auctoritas, influence, authority, advice.

audacia, ae (audax), boldness.

audacter, boldly.

audeo, ēre, ausus sum, be bold, dare.

augeo, ēre, auxi, auctus, increase.

Aulus (A.), Aulus (a Roman first name).

aut, or (used when the difference is marked. Cf. **vel**); **aut . . . aut,** either . . . or. **XXXVIII. 2.**

autem (aut), conj., on the other hand, but, moreover.

auxilium, i (augeo), help, aid; *in pl.*, auxiliaries.

a-vertō, ere, ti, sus, turn off or away.

avus, i, grandfather.

B.

bello (1), make or wage war.

bellicōsus, a, um, full of war, warlike. **XLVII. 5.**

beneficium, i (bene, well, + facio), well-doing, kindness, benefit.

biduum, i (bis, twice, + dies), two days.

bi-ennium, i (annus), two years.

bi-partīto (pars), adv. in two parts or divisions.

bonitas (bonus), goodness.

bonus, a, um, morally good, good.

brachium (bracch-), i, the forearm.

C.

cado, ere, cecidi, casus, fall.

Caesar, Caesaris, full name Caius Julius Caesar. *Vid.* Historical Sketch.

Caius (C.) or Gaius (G.). Caius or Gaius (a Roman first name).

calamitas, disaster, misfortune.

capio, ere, cepi, captus, take, seize.

caput, capitis, n., head.

carrus, i, cart.

Cassiānus, a, um, Cassian, pertaining to Cassius.

castellum, i (diminutive of castrum), a small fort, fortress, redoubt.

castra, ōrum (castrum, fort), a fortified camp, camp.

casus, us (cado), a falling, fall, accident, calamity, chance.

Catamantaloedes, is, the name of a Sequanian chieftain.

causa, ae, cause, reason.
caveo, ēre, cavi, cautus, take heed or care, take precaution, beware.
celeriter (celerius, celerrime), quickly.
Celtae, ārum, the Celts.
census, us (censeo, register), an assessing or registering, census.
centum, indecl. adj., one hundred.
certus, a, um, sure, certain (*aliquem certiōrem facere, to inform some one*).
cibarius, a, um, pertaining to food; as *subst.*, **cibaria, ōrum**, food, provisions.
circiter, adv., about.
circuitus, us (circum + eo), a going round, circuit.
circum, praep. c. acc., around, about.
circum-venio, īre, vēni, ventus, come around, surround, embarrass, circumvent.
citerior, ōris, adj. (no positive), nearer, hither.
citra, praep. c. acc., on this side of.
civitas, citizenship, state, citizens.
claudio, ere, clausi, clausus, shut, close.
cliens, ntis, client, dependent.
coemo, ere, ēmi, emptus (cum + emo, buy), buy up, purchase.
coepi, coepisse, defec. verb., begin.
co-erceo, ēre, ui, itus (cum + arceo), enclose completely, repress, coerce.
cogo, ere, coēgi, coactus (cum + ago), drive together, collect, compel.

cognosco, ere, gnōvi, gnitus, learn thoroughly; *in ppf.*, have learned, know.
co-hortor (1), urge earnestly, exhort, encourage.
collis, is, m., hill.
col-loco (cum + locus) (1), place together, station, establish.
col-loquor, loqui, locūtus sum, speak together, converse.
com-būro, ere, bussi, bustus (uro, burn), burn completely, burn up, consume.
com-memoro (1), recount, state, mention.
commeo (1), resort to or visit (frequently).
com-mitto, ere, mīsi, missus, send together, commit, combine, join.
com-mode (modus, a measure), *adv.*, fitly, conveniently.
commone-facio, ere, fēci, factus (moneo), remind forcibly, admonish.
com-moveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtus, move deeply, disturb, excite.
com-munio (4), fortify completely, intrench.
com-mutatio, a changing, change.
com-mūto (1), change entirely, reverse.
com-paro (paro, prepare), make ready, prepare (with earnestness).
com-perio, īre, peri, pertus, find out with certainty, ascertain (by inquiry).
com-plector, ī, plexus sum (plico, fold), embrace.
complūres, a or ia, several together, very many.
complūres, ium, several, many persons.

com-porto, bring *or* carry together.

conātus, a, um (*pf. part. of conor*), *in neut. pl.*, things attempted, attempts.

conātus, us (**conor**), an attempt.

concēdo, ere, cessi, cessus, go away, give way, yield.

concilio (1), (Greek, καλ-, *call*), call together, win over, conciliate.

concilium, i, assembly, council.

con-cursus, us (**curro**), a running together, rush, concourse.

con-dicio (**ditio**), **ōnis** (**dico**), a speaking together, agreement, terms.

con-dono (1), give freely, give up, pardon.

con-dūco, ere, duxi, ductus, lead *or* bring together, hire.

con-fero, ferre, tuli, collātus, bring together, collect, compare; **se conferre**, to betake one's self, retreat.

confertus, a, um (**confercio**, *crowd together*), crowded, in close array, compact.

con-ficio, ere, fēci, factus, do thoroughly, complete, accomplish.

con-fido, ere, fisus sum (**fides**), trust fully, rely upon, confide in.

con-firmo (1), make firm, establish, assure, promise.

con-jicio (**conicio**), ere, jēci, jectus (**jacio**), throw together, hurl with force, to put together (logically), *and hence* conjecture.

con-juratio, **ōnis** (**juro**, *swear*), a swearing together, conspiracy.

con- (col-) ligo (1) (**ligo**, *bind*), bind together.

conor (1), try, attempt.

con-qui-ro, ere, quisīvi, quisitus (**quaero**), seek carefully, search out, hunt up.

con-sanguineus, a, um (**sanguis**, *blood*), related by blood; *as subst.*, blood relation, kinsman.

con-scisco, ere, scīvi, scitus, decree, appoint.

con-scius, a, um (**scio**), knowing with, conscious.

con-scribo, ere, scripsi, scriptus, write together, enroll, levy.

con-sequor, sequi, secūtus, follow up, pursue, obtain.

consīdo, ere, sēdi, sessus, sit together, hold sessions, encamp.

consilium, i, counsel, plan.

con-sisto, ere, stiti, stitus, take a stand, stand still, stop.

con-sōlor (1), console, comfort, solace.

con-spectus, us (**conspicio**, *see*), a looking at, sight.

con-stituo, ere, ui, ūtus (**statuo**, *set*), set together, arrange, determine.

con-suesco, ere, suēvi, suētus, accustom, habituate; *in pf.*, to have become accustomed, be wont.

consul, ulis, consul.

con-sūmo, ere, sumpsī, sumptus (**sumo**, *take*), fully grasp, devour, destroy, consume.

con-tendo, ere, tendi, tentus (**tendo**, *stretch*), stretch tight, strive, hasten.

continenter (**contineo**), continuously.

con-tineo, ēre, ui, tentus (**teneo**, *hold*), hold together, bound.

contra, *præp. c. acc. et adv.*, opposite, against. 18.

contumelia, *ae*, affront, indignity.
con-venio, *īre, vēni, ventus*, come together, meet, assemble.
convenit (*impers.*), it is fitting, it is agreed.
conventus, *us*, a coming together, assembly.
con-verto, *ere, ti, sus*, turn, change, front, wheel about.
con-voco (1), call together, summon.
copia, *ae*, plenty; *in pl.*, forces, troops.
copiōsus, *a, um*, well supplied, plentiful, abounding.
cotidie or **quotidie** (*quot + dies*), daily.
creo (1), create, elect, appoint.
cremo (1), burn to ashes, consume.
creasco, *ere, crevi, cretus*, grow, increase.
cultus, *us* (*colo, cultivate*), style of living, civilization, culture.
cum, *praep. c. abl.*, with.
cum (*quum*), *conj.*, when, since, although.
cupide, eagerly.
cupiditas, eager desire, longing, cupidity.
cupidus, *a, um*, desirous of, eager for.
cupio, *ere, īvi (ii), ītus*, wish for ardently, long for, desire; (*with dat.*) wish well to, favor.
curo (1), take care.
custos, *ōdis, m. or f.*, guard, sentinel.

D.

damno (1), condemn.
de, *praep. c. abl.*, down from, from, for, concerning.

debeo (*de + habeo*), have or keep from, owe, be bound.
decem, *indecl. adj.*, ten.
de-cipio, *ere, cēpi, ceptus (capio)*, entrap, deceive.
decurio, *ōnis*, the leader of a squad of ten cavalry, a decurion.
dediticius, *i (dedo, give up)*, one who has surrendered, a prisoner of war.
editio, *ōnis*, a giving up, surrender.
defendo, *ere, di, sus*, keep or ward off, defend.
defessus, *a, um* (*pf. part. of defestiscor*), wearied, exhausted.
de-jicio (*-icio*), *ere, jēci, jectus (jacio)*, throw or cast down, dislodge.
de-inde, from thence, then.
de-libero (1), (*libro, weigh*), ponder, deliberate.
de-ligo, *ere, lēgi, lectus (lego, choose)*, pick out, select.
de-minuo, *ere, ui, ūtus (minus, less)*, lessen, diminish.
de-monstro, show plainly, point out.
demum, *adv., sup. of prep. de*, downmost, at length, finally.
denique, *adv.*, and thereupon, at last, lastly.
de-pōno, *ere, posui, positus (pono, place)*, place or lay aside.
de-populo (1), ravage, lay waste.
de-precātor, *ōris*, one who averts by praying, spokesman, intercessor.
de-signo (*signum, a mark*), mark out, specify, designate.
de-sisto, *ere, stiti, stitus (sisto, stand)*, stand off, refrain, desist.

de-spēro (1) (*spes, hope*), be hopeless, despair.

de-spicio, ere, spexi, spectus, look down on, despise.

de-stituo, ere, stitui, stitutus (statuo), set aside, forsake, abandon.

de-stringo, ere, strinxi, strictus (stringo, draw), draw off, unsheathe, draw.

de-terreo (2), frighten off, deter, discourage.

deus, i, a god.

dexter, tra (tera), trum, the right; **dextra** (*sc. manus, hand*), the right hand.

dico, ere, dixi, dictus, say, tell, speak.

dictio (dico), a speaking, pleading, delivery.

dies, ēi, m. et f., day, a set day or time.

dif-fero, ferre, distuli, dilātus (dis), carry or bear apart, differ, defer.

dif-ficilis, e (dis + facilis), not easy, difficult.

di-mitto, ere, mīsi, missus, send apart, dismiss.

dis-cēdo, ere, cessi, cessus, go apart, separate.

disco, ere, didici, learn.

dis-jicio (-icio) ere, jēci, jectus, throw apart, cast asunder.

dis-pōno, ere, posui, positus, place apart, set in different places, arrange, dispose.

ditissimus, a, um (sup. of dis), richest.

diu, adv., for a long time.

diuturnus, a, um (diu), of long duration, long.

dis-, di-, an inseparable prefix with the force of *apart, asunder*.

di-vido, ere, vīsi, vīsus, divide.

do, dare, dedi, datus, give.

doleo (2), suffer pain, grieve.

dolor, ōris, pain, grief.

dolus, i, treachery, deceit.

domus, us, house, home; **domi, at** home.

dubito (1), doubt, hesitate.

dubitatio, doubt.

dubius, a, um, doubtful.

du-centi, ae, a (duo), two hundred.

duco, ere, duxi, ductus, lead, draw, consider.

dum, conj., while, until.

Dumnorix, igis, the name of an Aeduan chieftain.

duo, duae, duo, two.

duo-decim (decem), *indecl. adj.*, twelve.

dux, ducis (duco), leader.

E.

e, ex, praep. c. abl., from, out of.

e-dūco, ere, duxi, ductus, lead forth, draw out.

effemino (1), weaken, enervate.

ef-fero, ferre, extuli, elātus, bear away or out, lift up, elate.

ego, I (dat., mihi; acc., me).

e-gredior, i, gressus sum (gradior, step), go out, march forth.

e-gregius, a, um (grex, herd), uncommon, preëminent, excellent.

19.

emo, ere, emi, emptus, buy.

e-mitto, ere, misi, missus, send forth or out, let go, cast away.

enim, *conj.*, in fact, for (corroborative and explanatory).
e-nuntio (1), tell out, reveal, report.
eo, *ire*, **ivi**, **itus**, go.
eo, *adv.*, to that place, thither.
eōdem, *adv.*, to the same place.
eques, **equitis** (**equito**, *ride*), rider, horseman, knight; *in pl.*, cavalry.
equester, **tris**, **tre** (**eques**), belonging to a horseman, cavalry, equestrian.
equitātus, **us** (**equito**), a riding, cavalry.
equus, **i**, horse.
e-ripio, **ere**, **ripui**, **reptus** (**rapio**), snatch away, rescue; **se eripere**, to escape.
et, and.
etiam (*conj.*), and also, even.
e-vello, **ere**, **velli**, **vulsus**, pull or tear out.
ex, *cid. e.*
exemplum, **i**, example.
exercitus, **us** (**exerceo**, *exercise*), an exercised, trained body; an army.
ex-eo, **īre**, **īvi** (**ii**), **itus**, go out.
ex-istimo (**aestimo**, *estimate*), value, estimate, think.
ex-istimatio, a judging, opinion, estimation.
ex-pedio (4) (**pes**, *foot*), free the feet, extricate; *in pf. pass. part.*, unencumbered, (*of troops*) light armed.
explorātor (**explōro**, *investigate*), scout, spy, reconnoitrer.
ex-pugno (1) (**pugno**, *fight*), fight successfully, take by storm, storm.
ex-specto (**expecto**) (1), look out, await, expect.
extrēmus, **a**, **um** (**exter**, **exterus**), outermost, furthest, extreme.

F.

facile, easily.
facilis, **e**, easy.
facio, **ere**, **feci**, **factus**, make, do.
facultas (**facio**), means or opportunity of doing, opportunity.
fames, **is**, hunger, famine.
familia, **ae**, slaves of a household, household, retinue.
familiāris, **e** (**familia**), belonging to the household, private; *as subst.*, friend.
res familiāris, private property.
faveo, **ēre**, **favi**, **fautus**, favor.
fere, *adv.*, almost.
fero, **ferre**, **tuli**, **latus**, bear, carry, bring.
ferrum, **i**, iron.
fides, **ei**, confidence, faith; assurance of good faith, protection.
filia, **ae**, daughter.
filius, **i**, son.
finis, **is**, *m.*, end, limit, boundary; *in pl.*, territory, confines.
finitimus, **a**, **um** (**fines**), bordering upon, adjoining, neighboring; *as subst.*, neighbors.
fio, **fieri**, **factus sum**, be made or done, happen; *used as pass. of facio*.
firmus, **a**, **um**, strong, firm.
flagito (1), demand repeatedly, press for.
fleo, **fīre**, **flevi**, **fletus**, weep.
flumen, **inis** (**fluo**), a flowing stream, river.
fluo, **ere**, **fluxi**, **fluxus**, flow.
fortis, **e**, strong, brave.
fortitūdo (**fortis**), bravery.
fortūna, **ae** (**fors**), chance, fortune; *in pl.*, goods, possessions.

fossa, **ae** (**fodio**, *dig*), ditch, trench.
frater, **fratris**, brother.
fraternus, **a, um**, pertaining to a brother, brotherly, fraternal.
frigus, **oris**, coldness, cold.
fructus, **us** (**fruor**, *enjoy*), enjoyment, fruit. **28.**
frumentarius, **a, um** (**frumentum**), of *or* belonging to grain, abounding in grain, fruitful.
frumentum, **i**, grain.
fuga, **ae** (**fugio**, *flee*), flight.
fugitivus, **i** (**fugio**), a runaway slave *or* soldier, deserter.

G.

Gallia, **ae**, Gaul.
Gallicus, **a, um**, Gallic.
Gallus, **i**, a Gaul.
Garumna, **ae**, the Garonne, *a river of Gaul*.
Genāva (**Genua**), **ae**, Geneva.
Germāni, **ōrum**, the Germans.
gero, **ere**, **gessi**, **gestus**, carry on, wage, do.
gladius, **i**, sword. **25.**
gloria, **ae**, glory.
glorior, (**1**) glory, boast.
Graecus, **a, um**, Greek, Grecian.
gratia, **ae**, favor, popularity.
graviter (**gravis**), heavily, severely;
graviter ferre, be annoyed *or* vexed.

H.

habeo (**2**), have, hold.
Helvetia, **ae**, Helvetia, *now Switzerland*.
Helvetii, **ōrum**, the Helvetii, Helvetians.

Helvetius, **a, um**, of the Helvetii, Helvetian.
hibernus, **a, um** (**hiems**, *winter*), pertaining to winter, winter; **hiberna**, **ōrum** (*sc. castra*), winter quarters.
hic, **haec**, **hoc**, this.
hiemo (**1**) (**hiems**), pass the winter, winter.
Hispania, **ae**, Spain.
homo, **inis**, a human being *as a specimen of the race*, man.
honor, honor, distinction, office.
hora, **ae**, hour.
hortor (**1**), arouse, urge.
hostis, **is**, stranger, (public) enemy; *in pl.* the enemy.
humanitas (human nature), refinement.

I.

ibi, in that place, there.
ictus, **us**, (**ico**, *strike*), stroke, blow.
idem, **eadem**, **idem**, the same.
Idus, **uum**, *f. pl.*, the Ides.
ignōro (**1**), (*in, neg., + gnarus, knowing*) not know, be ignorant.
ille, **illa**, **illud**, that, *used of what is remote*.
illic (**ille**), *adv.*, in that place, there, yonder.
im-mortālis, **e** (**mors**, *death*), undying, immortal.
im-pedimentum, **i** (**pes**), impediment, hindrance; *in pl.*, heavy baggage, baggage-train. **23.**
im-pedio (**4**) (**pes**), obstruct, impede.
im-pendeo, **ēre** (**pendeo**, *hang*), overhang, impend.

- imperium, i (impero)**, a command, right of command, supreme power.
- impero (1)**, command, enjoin, make requisition for.
- impetro (1)**, obtain by entreaty, accomplish.
- im-petus, us (peto)**, attack, assault.
- im-porto (1)**, bring in, import.
- im-probus, a, um (probus, proved)**, not standing the test, defective, base, wicked.
- im-provīso (pro + visus, seen)**, *adv.*, unawares, unexpectedly.
- impūne (in + poena, punishment)**, *adv.*, without punishment, with impunity.
- impunitas**, freedom from punishment, impunity.
- in, praep. c. acc. (of motion)**, into, to, against, *c. abl. (of rest)*, in, on, over.
- in- (im-, un- etc.)**, *inseparable negative particle*, not.
- in-cendo, ere, di, sus**, set fire to.
- in-cito (1) (citō, urge)**, urge on, incite.
- in-colo, ere, ui, cultus (colo, cultivate)**, dwell in, inhabit.
- in-commodum, i (commodus, convenient)**, an inconvenience, disadvantage, disaster.
- in-credibilis, e (credo, believe)**, not to be believed, incredible, extraordinary.
- inde, adv.**, from that place, thence.
- indiciū, i**, information, evidence.
- in-dūco, ere, duxi, ductus**, lead in or into, lead on, induce.
- inferior, ius (inferus)**, lower, in place; later, in time.
- in-fero, ferre, tuli, illātus**, bring into or upon, wage upon, attack.
- in-flecto, ere, flexi, flectus (flecto, bend)**, bend in, bend, inflect.
- in-fluo, ere, fluxi, fluctus**, flow into, flow.
- in-imīcus, a, um (amīcus)**, unfriendly.
- initium, i (in + eo)**, beginning.
- injuria, ae (jus, right)**, wrong, injustice.
- injussu, abl. of assumed injussus**, used as an *adv.*, without command.
- inopia, ae (ops, aid)**, lack, scarcity, destitution.
- in-opīnans, ntis (opīnor, suppose)**, not expecting, surprised.
- in-sciens, ntis (scio, know)**, not knowing, unaware.
- in-sequor, sequi, secūtus**, follow up, pursue.
- insidiae, ārum (sedeo, sit)**, lying in wait, ambushade, treachery.
- in-signis, e (signum, mark)**, marked, distinguished, remarkable; as *subst.*, a distinctive mark, sign of office, uniform.
- insolenter (soleo, be accustomed)**, contrary to custom, insolently.
- in-stituo, ere, tui, tūtus (statuo)**, set up, construct, determine, instruct.
- institūtum, i**, an established course, custom, institution.
- in-sto, stāre, stiti, stātus**, stand upon or near, approach, attack.
- in-struo, ere, struxi, structus (struo, build)**, build into, arrange, draw up.
- intellego (-ligo), ere, lexi, lectus (inter + lego, choose)**, distinguish between, understand, know.
- inter, praep. c. acc.**, between, among.

inter-cēdo, *ere*, **cessi**, **cessus**, go between, interpose, intercede.

inter-clūdo, *ere*, **clūsi**, **clūsus** (**claudio**, *shut*), shut or cut off, prevent.

inter-diu, *adv.*, during the day, by day.

inter-dum, *adv.*, between whiles, sometimes.

interea, *adv.*, meanwhile.

inter-ficio, *ere*, **fēci**, **fectus** (**facio**), make from among, do away with, kill.

interim, *adv.*, meanwhile.

inter-mitto, *ere*, **mīsi**, **missus**, leave or break off, interrupt.

inter-necio (-**nicio**) (**nex**, *slaughter*), slaughter, extermination.

interpres, **interpretis**, interpreter.

inter-sum, *esse*, **fui**, be between, intervene.

inter-vallum, *i* (**vallum**, *rampart*), interval.

invītus, *a, um*, unwilling.

ipse, **ipsa**, **ipsum**, *dem. pron.*, self, himself, herself, etc.

is, **ea**, **id**, *dem. pron.*, this, that, he, she, it.

ita, *adv.*, so, thus.

itaque, *conj.*, and so, therefore.

item, *adv.*, in like manner, likewise, so also.

iter, **itineris**, *n.* (**eo**, *go*), a going, way, journey, march.

J.

jacto (1) (**jacio**), throw repeatedly, toss about, discuss.

jam, at this time, now, already.

jubeo, **ēre**, **jussi**, **jussus**, order.

judicium, *i*, a judging, judgment, court.

judico (1) (**judez**, *a judge*), judge.

jugum, *i* (**jungo**), yoke; *of a hill*, ridge.

jumentum, *i* (**jungo**), yoke or draught animal, beast of burden.

jungo, *ere*, **junxi**, **junctus**, join.

Jura, *ae*. The mountain range running from the Rhine to the Rhone.

jus, **juris**, right, justice, law.

jus-jurandum, **jurisjurandi** (**jus** + **juro**, *swear*), swearing one's right, oath. *Both parts of this compound are declined.*

justitia, *ae* (**justus**), rightness, uprightness, justice.

juvat, *impers.*, it pleases.

juvo, **āre**, **juvi**, **jutus**, help, aid.

K.

Kalendae (**Calendae**), **ārum**. The Calends, the first day of a month. XXXVIII., 8.

L.

lacesso, *ere*, **lvi**, **ltus**, provoke, challenge, assault.

lacrima, *ae*, tear.

lacus, *us*, lake.

largior (4) (**largus**), give freely, bribe.

largiter, largely, freely.

largitio, giving freely, bribery.

late (**latus**), broadly, widely.

latitūdo (**latus**), width.

latus, *a, um*, broad, wide.

latus, **eris**, side, flank.

legatio, embassy.

legātus, i (**lego**, *choose*), one chosen or delegated, ambassador, lieutenant.

legio, legion. XXXIX., 5.

Lemannus, i, lake Lemman or Geneva.

lenitas (**lenis**, *smooth*), smoothness, gentleness.

lex, legis, law.

liberalitas (**liber**, *free*), generosity, liberality.

libere (**liber**), freely.

liberi, ōrum, the free members of a household (opposed to slaves), children.

libertas, freedom, liberty.

liceor (2), bid at an auction.

licet *impers.*, it is permitted; **rogāre ut sibi liceat**, to ask permission.

Lingones, um, the Lingones.

lingua, ae, tongue, language.

linter, lintris, f. canoe, ferry-boat.

littera (litera), ae, a letter of the alphabet, a written character.

locus, i, place; *in nom. and acc. pl.*, loca.

longe (**longus**), *adv.*, far, by far, long.

longitūdo (**longus**), length.

loquor, i, locūtus, speak.

Lucius (L), i, a Roman first name.

lux, lucis, light.

M.

magis, *compar. adv.*, more, rather; *sup.*, **maxime**.

magistrātus, us, office, magistracy, magistrate.

magnopere (**magno opere**), with great labor, greatly; *comp.* **mājōre opere**, *sup.* **maximopere**.

magnus, a, um, great, large; *comp.* **major**, *sup.* **maximus**.

maleficium, i (**male**, *badly*, + **facio**), wrong-doing, mischief, wickedness.

mando (1), (**manus**, *hand*, + **do**, *give*), entrust, commit, **se fugae mandāre**, to take to flight.

manus, us, f. hand, armed force, regarded as the instrument of war.

matara, ae, a Gallic javelin.

mater, matris, mother.

matrimonium, i, marriage.

Matrona, ae, the Marne.

matūro (1), bring to maturity, hasten.

matūrus, a, um, ripe, complete, early.

maxime (**magnus**), *sup. adv.*, very greatly, most, especially.

maximus, vid. magnus.

me (*acc. of ego*), me.

medius, a, um, in the middle, mid.

memoria, ae, recollection, memory.

mensis, is, m., month.

mercātor, ōris, merchant.

mereor (2), deserve, earn, merit.

meritum, i, desert, merit.

metior, īri, mensus sum, measure.

mihi, vid. ego.

miles, itis, soldier. XXXIX., 4.

militāris, e (**miles**), pertaining to a soldier, military.

mille, num. adj., a thousand; *in pl. as subst.*, **milia** (**millia**), **ium**, etc.; **mille passuum**, a mile.

minime, adv. (**minimus**), least, by no means.

minimus, a, um (*sup. of parvus*, *in ll.*), least, very little.

minor (*comp. of parvus*), smaller, less.

minuo, ere, ui, ūtus, (minus), make smaller, lessen.

minus, adv. (minor), less.

mitto, ere, misi, missus, send.

modo, adv. (modus), only.

molo, ere, ui, itus (mola, mill), grind.

moneo (2), advise, remind, warn, admonish.

mons, tis, m., mountain.

morior, mori (morīri), **mortuus sum**, die.

moror (1), tarry, delay.

mors, tis (morior), death.

mos, moris, manner, custom; *in pl.*, customs, character.

moveo, ēre, movi, motus, move.

mulier, mulieris, woman.

multitūdō (multus), great number, multitude.

multus, a, um, much; *in pl.*, many.

munio, (t) (moenia, walls), build a wall, fortify.

munitio (munio), fortifying, fortification.

murus, i, wall.

N.

nam, conj., for.

natūra, ae, nature, character.

navis, is, ship.

ne, conj., not, to, that . . . not, lest; *after words of fearing*, that.

-ne, enclitic, interrog. particle. I. N.

nec, vid. neque.

necessario, adv., necessarily, unavoidably.

necessarius, a, um, necessary, *as subst.* kinsman, client, friend.

nego (1), say no, deny.

nemo, inis (ne + homo), no man, no one; *the gen. and abl. sing.* are usually supplied from **nullus**.

neque (nec), *as adv.*, not; *as conj.*, and not, and also.

neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor.

nervus, i, sinew, tendon, nerve; *in pl.* power, strength.

neve (neu), (**ne + ve, or**) *adv.*, and not, nor.

nex, necis (neco, slay), death.

nihil (nihilum), *indecl. noun*, nothing.

nisi, conj., if not, unless.

nitor, i, nisus vel nixus sum, rest upon, rely upon, strive.

nobilis, e (nosco, know), famous, high-born, noble.

nobilitas, nobility.

noctu (nox), *adv.*, by night.

nolo, nolle, nolui (ne + volo), not wish, be unwilling.

nomen, inis, name.

nominātim, adv., by name.

non, adv., not.

nonaginta, num. adj., ninety.

nondum, adv., not yet.

non-nullus, a, um, not none, some, *in pl. as subst.* some, several.

non-numquam, not never, sometimes.

Noricus, a, um, of the Norici, Norican.

nos, nom. et acc. pl. fr. ego, we, us.

noster, tra, trum (nos), our, ours.

novem, num. adj., nine.

novus, a, um, new; **novae res**, new things, revolution.

nox, noctis, night.
nubo, ere, nupsi, nuptus, veil one's self *as for marriage*, marry.
nudus, a, um, naked, exposed, unprotected.
nullus, a, um (**ne + ullus**, any) (*gen. ius, dat. i*), not any, no, none.
num, interrog. particle implying a *neg. answer*.
numerus, i, number.
nuntio (1), report, announce.
nuntium, i, report, message.
nuntius, i, one who reports, messenger.
nuper, recently.

O.

ob, praep. c. acc., in front, before, on account of.
ob-aerātus, i, one involved in debt, debtor; XXIX.
ob-jicio (icio), ere, jēci, jectus (jacio), throw in front, expose, object.
obliviscor, i, oblītus sum, forget.
ob-secro (1) (**sacer, sacred**), beseech, implore.
ob-ses, idis (ob + sedeo), hostage, XLVII. 6.
ob-stringo, ere, strinxī, strictus, bind.
ob-tineo, ēre, ui, tentus, hold, possess.
occāsus, us, falling, setting.
oc-cīdo, ere, cīdi, cīsus (caedo, cut), cut off, kill, slay.
oc-culto (colo), hide, conceal.
occupo (1) (**capio**), take possession of, seize, occupy.

oceanus, i, ocean.
Ocelum, i, a city of Gallia Cisalpina.
octo, num. adj., eight.
octodecim, eighteen.
octoginta, eighty.
oculus, i, eye.
odi, odisse, def. verb., hate. *The pf. is pres. in meaning.* App. 18.
of-fendo, ere, i, sus, strike against, stumble, offend.
offensio, a striking against, offence.
omnīno (omnis), adv., altogether, in all.
oportet, ēre, uit, impers. verb., it is necessary, one ought.
oppidum, i, stronghold, town.
op-pugno, fight against, storm.
ops, opis (*not found in nom. sing.*), power, strength; *in pl. means resources*.
opus, eris, work.
oratio (oro), speaking, oration.
Orgetorix, igis, a chief of the Helvetii.
oriens, ntis (orior), rising.
orior, īri, ortus sum, rise.
oro (1), speak, plead, entreat.
os-tendo, ere, i, tus (tendo, stretch), expose to view, exhibit.

P.

pabulatio (pabulor), foraging
pabulum, i, food, fodder.
paco (1) (**pax**), pacify, subdue.
paene, adv., almost.
pagus, i, canton, district.
par, paris, equal.
parātus, a, um (paro), prepared.
pareo (2), obey.
paro (1), prepare, provide.

pars, tis, part, direction.

parvus, a, um (*comp. minor, sup. minimus*), small, little.

passus, us, step, pace (five Roman feet) ; **mille passus**, a mile.

pateo, ēre, ui, open, extend.

pater, patris, father.

patior, pati, passus sum, suffer, permit.

pauci, ae, a, few.

pax, pacis, peace.

pello, ere, pepuli, pulsus, drive, beat.

per, praep. c. acc., through, by means of.

per-dūco, ere, duxi, ductus, lead through.

per-ficio, ere, fēci, fectus (facio), do thoroughly, accomplish, complete.

per-fringo, ere, frēgi, fractus (*frango, break*), break through.

perfuga, ae, deserter.

per-fugio, ere, fūgi, flee, desert.

periculum, i, danger.

perītus, a, um (perior), experienced, practised, skilled.

per-moveo, ere, mōvi, mōtus, move thoroughly, rouse.

perniciēs, ei (neco), destruction.

per-paucus, a, um, very little, very few.

per-rumpo, ere, rūpi, ruptus, break through.

per-sequor, i, secūtus sum, follow after, pursue.

persevēro (1), continue, persist.

per-solvo, ere, solvi, solūtus (*solvo, loose*), loose thoroughly, pay in full, pay.

per-suadeo, ēre, si, sus, convince, persuade.

per-terreo (2), frighten thoroughly.
per-tineo, ēre, ui, reach through, tend, pertain.

per-venio, īre, vēni, ventus, come through, arrive.

pes, pedis, foot.

peto, ere, īvi (ii), ītus, attack, aim at, seek.

phalanx, gis, a compact band of soldiers, phalanx. 24.

pilum, i, javelin. 25.

plebs, plebis, common people, plebeians.

plurimus, a, um (multus), very much, most, very many.

plus, pluris (multus), more.

poena, ae, punishment, penalty.

polliceor (2), promise.

pono, ere, posui, positus, put, place.

pons, ntis, bridge.

populatio, devastating, ravaging.

populor (1), devastate.

populus, i, people.

porto (1), carry, bring.

portorium, i, tax, tariff. 18.

posco, ere, poposci, demand.

possessio, possession.

possum, posse, potui (potis, able + sum), be able, can.

post, praep. c. acc., behind, after.

postea, adv., after that, afterwards.

posterus, a, um (post), coming after, following, next.

post-quam, conj., after that, after, as soon as.

postridie, adv. (posterus + dies), on the day after. 23.

potens, ntis, being able, powerful.

potentia, ae, power, ability.

potestas (possum), legal power, authority.

potior, iri, potītus sum, get *or* obtain possession of.

prae-cēdo, ere, cessi, cessus, go before, surpass, precede.

prae-cipio, take in advance, give precepts, order.

prae-fero, ferre, tuli, lātus, bear before, choose, prefer.

prae-ficio, ere, fēci, fectus, set before *or* over, place in command.

prae-mitto, ere, mīsi, missus, send before *or* in advance.

prae-opto (1), choose rather, prefer.

praesens, ntis (praesum), present; *as subst.*, **praesentia, ium**, present circumstances, the present.

praesertim, especially.

prae-sidium, i (sedeo), protection, guard, garrison.

prae-sto, stāre, stiti, stātus, stand before, excel, present, furnish.

prae-sum, esse, fui, be before *or* over, command.

praeter, praep. c. acc., past by, beyond, except.

praeter-eo, īre, īvi (ii), itus, go by *or* beyond, *as subst.* **praeterita, ōrum**, the past.

praeter-quam, adv., except that, beyond, save.

prae-tor (eo), commander, governor, judge. 22.

prendo (prehendo), ere, di, sus, lay hold of, grasp.

pretium, i, price.

prex, precis, prayer, entreaty.

prīdie, adv. (primus), on the day before.

primum, adv., in the first place, first.

primus, a, um, superl. adj., first.

principātus, us, leadership, chief position.

princeps, ipis, chief, *as subst.* chief, leader.

pristinus, a, um, former.

prius, comp. adv., sooner.

prius-quam, sooner than, before.

privātim, privately, as private citizens.

privātus, a, um, private.

pro, praep. c. abl., before, for, in behalf of, in proportion to.

probo (1), try, prove, approve.

pro-do, ere, didi, ditus (do, give), give *or* put forth, transmit, hand down.

proelium, i, battle.

profectio, setting out, departure.

proficiscor, i, profectus sum, set out, depart.

pro-hibeo (2), keep from, prohibit.

pro-jicio (icio), ere, jēci, jectus, throw forth, cast down.

prope, adv. et praep. c. acc., near.

pro-pello, ere, pepuli, pulsus, drive before, propel.

propinquus, a, um, near, neighboring; *as subst.* relative, kinsman.

pro-pōno, ere, posui, positus, place *or* set forth, declare.

propter, praep. c. acc., on account of.

propter-ea, adv., for this reason.

pro-spicio, ere, spexi, spectus, look forth, look out for.

provincia, ae, province.

proxime, adv. (prope), next, nearest, last.

proximus, a, um, nearest, last.

publice, publicly, in the name of the state.

publicus, a, um, public.

Publius, i (P.), a Roman first name.

puer, i, child, boy.

pugna, ae, fight, battle.

pugno (1), fight.

purgo (1), clear, purge, acquit, justify.

puto (1), compute, reckon, think.

Pyrenaeus, a, um, of the Pyrenees, Pyrenean.

Q.

qua, where.

quadraginta, num. adj., forty.

quadrigenti, ae, a, four hundred.

quaero, ere, **quaesivi** (ii), **quaesitus**, seek.

qualis, e, of what sort.

quam, adv. et conj., how, as, than ; c. sup., as possible.

quantus, a, um, how great ; **tantus** . . . **quantus**, so great . . . as.

qua-re, adv., how, by what means, wherefore.

quartus, a, um, fourth.

quattuor, num. adj., four.

-que, enclitic, and.

queror, i, **questus sum**, complain.

qui, **quae**, **quod**, rel. pron. and interrog. adj., who, which, what, that.

quidem, indeed ; **ne** . . . **quidem**, not even.

quin, conj. (**qui** + **ne**), that not, but that ; after expressions of doubt, that.

quindecim, num. adj., fifteen.

quingenti, ae, a, five hundred.

quini, ae, a, *distr.*, five each, five at a time, five.

quinque, num. adj., five.

quintus, a, um, fifth.

quis, **quae**, **quid**, *interrog. pron.*, who ? which ? what ? *as indef.*, any one, anything.

quis-quam, **quaequam**, **quid-quam** (**quicquam**), any one, anything.

quis-que, **quaeque**, **quidque** (**quodque**), each one, every one, each, every.

quod, conj., because.

quoque, conj., also.

quotidiānus (cot-), a, um, daily.

quum (cum), conj., when, since, although.

R.

rapīna, ae (**rapio**, *seize*), plunder, rapine.

ratio, reckoning, account, plan, reason. 27.

ratis, is, raft.

re- (red-), *inseparable prefix with the force of*, back, again.

recens, ntis, fresh, recent.

re-cipio, ere, **cēpi**, **ceptus**, take back, receive.

red-eo, īre, ii, **itus**, go back, return.

red-imo, ere, **ēmi**, **emptus** (emo, *buy*), buy back, buy up.

red-integro (1), restore, renew.

red-itio (eo), going back, return.

re-dūco, ere, **duxī**, **ductus**, lead back, withdraw.

re-fero, **ferre**, **tuli**, **lātus**, bring or carry back, report.

regnum, i (**rex**), sovereignty, royal power.

re-jicio (-icio), **ere, jēci, jectus**, throw back.
re-linguo, **ere, līqui, lictus**, leave behind, abandon.
re-liquus, **a, um**, the rest of, remaining; *as subst.* remainder.
re-miniscor, **i**, call to mind, remember.
re-moveo, **ēre, mōvi, mōtus**, move back.
re-nuntio (1), bring back word, report.
re-pello, **ere, reppuli, pulsus**, drive back, repulse.
repentīnus, **a, um**, sudden, unexpected.
re-perio, **īre, repperi, repertus**, find out, discover.
re-prehendo, **ere, di, sus**, hold back, blame, censure.
re-pugno (1), fight back, resist.
res, rei, thing, affair, matter.
re-scindo, **ere, scidi, scissus**, cut off, break down.
re-scisco, **ere, scīvi vel scii, scītus (scio)**, learn, ascertain.
re-sisto, **ere, stiti**, stand back, stop, resist.
re-spondeo, **ēre, di, sus** (*spondeo, promise*), answer, reply.
responsum, **i**, reply.
res-publica (*respublica*), **rei publicae**, state, republic. 20.
re-stituo, **ere, ui, ūtus**, set up again, restore.
re-tineo, **ēre, ui, tentus (teneo)**, hold back, retain.
re-vertō, **ere, verti, versus**, turn back, return; **revertor**, **i, dep.**, is generally used in the tenses of incomplete action.
Rhenus, **i**, the Rhine.

Rhodanus, **i**, the Rhone.
ripa, **ae**, bank of a river.
rogo (1), ask.
Romānus, **a, um**, Roman; *as subst.*,
Romāni, orum, the Romans.
rota, **ae**, wheel.
rursus, *adv.*, again.

S.

saepe, *adv.*, often.
salus, ūtis, safety.
sarcinae, ārum, soldiers' packs, luggage. 24.
satis, *adv. et adj.*, sufficiently, enough, sufficient.
satis-facio, **ere, fēci, factus**, do enough, satisfy, make amends.
scelus, eris, crime.
scio, scīre, scivi, scitus, know.
scutum, **i**, shield. 25.
secrēto, secretly, in private.
secundus, **a, um**, second, following, favorable.
sed, *conj.*, but.
sedecim (sex), sixteen.
seditiōsus, **a, um**, seditious.
sementis, is (semen, seed), sowing, planting.
semper, always.
senātus, us (senex), senate.
senex, senis, old man.
seni, ae, a (sex), *distr.*, six each, six at a time, six.
sentio, īre, si, sus, be sensible of, feel, perceive, think.
separātīm, separately.
septentriōnes, um, seven stars, the Great Bear, the North.
septimus, **a, um**, seventh.
sepultūra, **ae**, burial. 26, 16.

Sequana, *ae*, the Seine.
Sequani, *ōrum*, the Sequani, Sequanians.
sequor, *i*, **secūtus sum**, follow.
servitus, *ūtis* (*servus*, *slave*), slavery.
seu, *vid.* **sive**.
sex, six.
sexaginta, sixty.
si, if.
signum, *i*, signal, standard. 25, 18.
silva, *ae*, forest.
simul, *adv.*, at the same time, at once.
sin (**si** + **ne**), but if.
sine, *praep. c. abl.*, without.
singuli, *ae, a*, *distr.*, one at a time, one by one, single.
sinister, *tra*, *trum*, on the left, left; **sinistra**, *ae* (*sc. manus*), the left hand.
sive (*seu*), *conj.*, (**si** + **vel**), or if.
sive ... sive, whether ... or.
socer, **soceri**, father-in-law.
socius, *i*, ally.
sol, **solis**, *m.*, the sun.
solum, *adv.*, only; **non solum ... sed etiam**, not only ... but also.
solum, *i*, soil, ground.
solus, *a, um* (*gen. -ius*, *dat. -i*), alone, only.
soror, sister.
spatium, *i*, space, period.
specto (1), look, face.
spero (1) (**spes**), hope, look for.
spes, *ei*, hope.
sponte, *abl. spontis gen. fr. assumed* **spons**, of one's own accord, willingly.
statuo, *ere, ui, ūtus*, set up, establish, determine.

studeo, *ēre, ui*, be eager for, desire.
studium, *i*, eagerness, attachment.
sub, *praep. c. acc. aut abl.*, under, near, beneath. 24, 11.
sub-dūco, *ere, duxi, ductus*, draw up or away, withdraw.
sub-eo, *īre, ii, itus*, go under or near, undergo.
sub-jicio (*icio*), *ere, jēci, jectus*, throw below, discharge, subject. 26.
sub-levo (1), lift up, aid.
sub-sisto, *ere, stiti*, stand still, withstand, resist.
sub-sum, *esse, fui*, be under or near.
sub-veho, *ere, vexe, vectus*, carry or bring up, convey.
suc-cēdo, *ere, cessi, cessus*, go under or near, approach, succeed.
sui, sibi, se vel sese, *reflex. pron. of 3d person*, himself, herself, etc.
sum, *esse, fui*, be.
summa, *ae* (*for summa res*), highest point, sum. 29.
sum-(*sub*) **moveo**, *ēre, mōvi, mōtus*, remove.
summus, *a, um* (*pos. superus*), highest.
sumo, *ere, sumpsi, sumptus*, take, claim.
sumptus, *us* (**sumo**), expense.
super, *adv., et praep. c. acc.*, above, over.
supero (1) (**super** + **eo**), go over or beyond, surpass, conquer.
super-sum, *esse, fui*, be over, survive.
superus, *a, um* (**super**), upper, high (*comp.*, superior; *sup.*, **suprēmus, summus**).

sup- (sub) **peto, ere, petīvi, petītus**, be at hand *or* in store.

suppliciter, humbly, suppliantly.

supplicium, i (**plico, fold or bend**), kneeling, *as a suppliant or to receive punishment*; punishment.

supra, adv., above, before. 24.

sus-cipio, ere, cēpi, ceptus (sub-), take from under, support, undertake.

suspicio (-pitio), mistrust, suspicion.

sus-tineo, ēre, ui, tentus, hold up *or* out, sustain.

suus, a, um, his, her, its, their.

T.

tabula, ae, board, writing tablet.
29, 2.

taceo (2), be silent, keep silent.

tam, adv., so.

tamen, adv., nevertheless, yet.

tandem, adv., at length.

tantus, a, um, so great.

telum, i, dart, missile. XLV.

temperantia, ae, self-control, moderation.

tempero (1), regulate, control, refrain.

tempto (tento) (1), try, attack.

tempus, oris, time.

teneo, ēre, ui, tentus, hold.

terra, ae, earth.

tertius, a, um, third.

testis, is, m. vel f., witness.

timeo, ēre, ui, fear.

timor, fear.

Titus (T.), a Roman first name.

tolero (1), endure, support.

tollo, ere, sustuli, sublātus, lift up, take away, destroy.

totus, a, um (*gen. -ius, dat. -i*), all, the whole of, entire.

tra-do, ere, didi, ditus (trans + do), give over, hand down, surrender.

tra-dūco, ere, duxi, ductus, lead across.

tragula, ae, a Gallic javelin. 26.

trans, praep. c. acc., across.

trans-eo, īre, ii, itus, go across, cross.

trans-figo, ere, fixi, fixus, thrust through, transfix.

trecenti, ae, a, three hundred.

tres, tria, three.

tribuo, ere, ui, ūtus, assign, bestow, attribute.

triduum, i (dies), three days.

triginta, thirty.

triplex, icis (**plico, fold**), threefold, triple.

tum, adv., then.

tuus, a, um (**tu, thou**), thy, your.

U.

ubi, when, where.

ulciscor, i, ultus sum, avenge, punish.

ullus, a, um (*gen. -ius, dat. -i*), any.

ulterior, ius, comp. adj., farther, ulterior.

una, adv., together.

unde, adv., from which place, whence.

undique (unde), adv., from all parts, on all sides.

unus, a, um (*gen. -īus, dat. -i*),
one.

urbs, urbis, city.

ut *rel uti, conj.*, that, in order that,
to; *as adv. foll. by indicative*, as.

uter, tra, trum (*gen. -īus, dat. -i*),
which of two, which.

utor, i, usus sum, use.

uxor, wife.

V.

vaco (1), be vacant *or* unoccupied.

vadum, i, ford, shallow.

vagor (1), wander.

vallum, i, palisade, rampart. 26, 7.

vasto (1), lay waste, devastate.

vectigal, ālis, tax, revenue. 18.

vel, or; **vel . . . vel**, either . . . or.

XXXVIII. 2.

venio, īre, veni, ventus, come.

verbum, i, word.

vereor (2), reverence, fear.

vergo, ere, incline, verge, be situated.

vergobretus, i, the title of the chief
magistrate of the Aeduan.

verus, a, um, true.

vesper, eris et eri, evening.

vester, tra, trum (vos), your.

veterānus, a, um (vetus), old,
veteran; *as subst.*, veteran soldier,
veteran.

vetus, eris, old, former.

vexo (1) (*freq. of veho, carry*),
agitate, distress, vex.

via, ae, way.

victoria, ae, victory.

vicus, i, village.

video, ēre, vidi, visus, see; *in*
pass., be seen, seem.

vigilia, ae, watch of the night, watch.
LII., 8.

viginti, twenty.

vinco, ere, vici, victus, conquer.

vinculum (vinclum), i (vincio,
bind), bond, chain.

virtus, ūtis, virtue, valor.

vis, vis, force, vigor, violence; *in*
pl., **vires**, strength.

vita, ae, life.

vito (1), shun, avoid.

vix, with difficulty, scarcely.

voco (1), call, summon.

volo, velle, volui, wish.

voluntas (volo), willingness, choice,
desire.

vos (tu), *nom. and acc. pl.*, you.

vulgus (volg-), i, n., sometimes *m.*,
the multitude, public, rabble.

vulnero (vol-) (1), wound, injure.

vulnus (vol-), eris, a wound.



GLOSSARY (GLOSSARIUM).

—

THE Glossary is intended to furnish the Latin forms of grammatical terms and of words convenient for class-room conversation.

—

ablative	ablatīvus, -a, -um (<i>adj.</i> , <i>sc.</i> casus).
absolute	absolutus, -a, -um.
accent (noun)	accentus, -us, <i>m.</i>
according to	secundum (<i>prep.</i> <i>with acc.</i>).
accusative	accusatīvus (<i>adj.</i> , <i>sc.</i> casus).
active	actīvus, -a, -um; agens, -ntis.
adjective	adjectivum, -i, <i>n.</i>
advance (noun) . . .	progressus, -us, <i>m.</i>
advance (verb) . . .	progredior (3), -gressus.
adverb	adverbium, -ii, <i>n.</i>
agent	agens, agentis.
agree	congruo (3) (<i>c. abl.</i>); concordo (1).
agreement	concordatio, -ōnis.
alphabet	alphabētum, -i, <i>n.</i>
American	Americānus, -a, -um.
answer (noun) . . .	responsum, -i, <i>n.</i>
answer (verb) . . .	respondeo (2).
antecedent	antecedens, -entis.
apposition	appositio, -ōnis.
begin	incipio (3) (<i>imperative</i> , <i>incipi</i> , <i>pl.</i> <i>incipite</i>).
beginning	initium, -i, <i>n.</i> ; principium, -i, <i>n.</i> (<i>from the beginning</i> , <i>a principio</i>).
ball	pila, -ae, <i>f.</i>
bell	tintinnabulum, -i, <i>n.</i>
book	liber, -bri, <i>m.</i>
boy	puer, -i, <i>m.</i>
breakfast	prandium, -ii, <i>n.</i>
brother	frater, -tris, <i>m.</i>

campus	campus, -i, <i>m.</i>
cardinal	cardinālis, -e.
case	casus, -us, <i>m.</i>
causal	causālis, -e.
cause	causa, -ae.
chair	sella, -ae, <i>f.</i> , and sedes, -is, <i>f.</i>
chapter	caput, -itis, <i>n.</i>
class	classis, -is, <i>f.</i>
classmate, schoolmate	condiscipulus, -i, <i>m.</i>
clause	clausula, -ae, <i>f.</i>
close (verb)	claudio (3), -si, -sus.
coat	tunica, -ae, <i>f.</i> ; tegmen, -minis, <i>n.</i> ; vestis, -is, <i>f.</i>
college	collegium, -ii, <i>n.</i>
come	venio (4), -ni, -ntum.
common	commūnis, -e; common, appellative; appella- tīvus, -a, -um.
comparative	comparatīvus, -a, -um.
compare	confero, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus.
compound	compositus, -a, -um.
concessive	concessīvus, -a, -um.
condition	conditio, -ōnis, <i>f.</i>
conditional	conditionālis, -e.
conjugation	conjugatio, -ōnis, <i>f.</i>
conjunction	conjunctio, -ōnis, <i>f.</i>
consecutive (of a clause)	contextus, -a, -um.
consonant	consonans, -antis, <i>f.</i> (<i>sc. litera</i>); consona, -ae, <i>f.</i>
construction	constructio, -ōnis, <i>f.</i>
conversation	colloquium, -i, <i>n.</i>
converse	colloquor (3).
copula	copula, -ae, <i>f.</i>
correct	rectus, -a, -um.
correctly	recte.
crayon, pencil	graphium, -ii, <i>n.</i>
daily newspaper	diurna urbis acta.
dative	datīvus (<i>adj., sc. casus</i>), (<i>of agent</i>) agentis, &c.
declarative	declaratīvus, -a, -um.
declension	declinatio, -ōnis, <i>f.</i>
decline	declīno (1) (<i>used both with nouns and verbs</i>).
declinable	declinabilis, -e.
defective	defectīvus, -a, -um.

degree	gradus, -us, <i>m</i> .
demonstrative	demonstrativus, -a, -um.
deponent	deponens, deponentis.
derive	traho (3).
description	descriptio, -ōnis, <i>f</i> .
desire	optatio, -ōnis, <i>f</i> . ; desiderium, -i, <i>n</i> .
desk	scrinium, -i, <i>n</i> .
determinative	definitus, -a, -um.
dictation	dictatio, -ōnis.
dinner	coena, -ae, <i>f</i> .
diphthong	diphthongus, -i, <i>m</i> .
direct discourse . . .	oratio recta.
discuss	tracto (1).
dissyllable	disyllabus, -i, <i>m</i> .
distributive	distributivus, -a, -um.
door	janua, -ae, <i>f</i> .
drink	bibo (3) (<i>pf.</i> , bibi).
end (noun)	finis, -is.
English	Anglicus, -a, -um ; <i>in Eng.</i> , Anglice .
erase	lino (3), līvi <i>vel</i> lēvi, litum.
erasure	litura, -ae, <i>f</i> .
essay	disputatio, -ōnis, <i>f</i> .
etymology	etymologia, -ae, <i>f</i> .
evening	vesper, -eri, <i>m</i> .
examination	examinatio, -ōnis, <i>f</i> .
example	exemplum, -i, <i>n</i> .
exception	exceptio, -ōnis, <i>f</i> .
exercise, practice . .	exercitatio, -ōnis, <i>f</i> .
exhortation	hortatio, -ōnis, <i>f</i> .
father	pater, patris, <i>m</i> .
feminine	femininus, -a, -um.
find	invenio (4) ; reperio (4), -peri, -pertum.
finite	finitus, -a, -um.
floor	tabulatio, -ōnis, <i>f</i> .
flower	flos, floris, <i>m</i> .
flower (a little flower)	flosculus, -i, <i>m</i> .
formation	formatio, -ōnis, <i>f</i> .
future	futūrus, -a, -um.
future perfect	futūrum exactum (<i>sc. tempus</i>).

gender	genus, generis, <i>n</i> .
genitive	genetivus (<i>adj.</i> , <i>sc.</i> casus), genitīvus. (Quint.)
gerund	gerundium, -ii, <i>n</i> .
gerundive	gerundīvus, -a, -um (<i>sc.</i> modus).
girl	puella, -ae, <i>f</i> .
give	dono (1).
go	eo, ire, ivi or ii, itus.
go on, proceed	perge (<i>pl.</i> pergite, <i>imper.</i> of pergo).
good-by	vale.
good-morning	salve (a general greeting, — “How are you?” “Save you,” etc.).
governs (is joined with)	jungitur, conjungitur (cum).
grammar	grammatica, -ōrum (<i>pl.</i> , <i>n</i> .); grammatica, -ae
grass	gramen, graminis, <i>n</i> .
Greek	Graecus, -a, -um; <i>in</i> Greek, Graece.
hand	manus, -us, <i>f</i> .
hat	galērus, -i, <i>m</i> .; pileum, -i, <i>n</i> .
hence	hinc.
here	hic.
historical	historicus, -a, -um.
history	historia, -ae.
hither	huc.
house	domus, -us, and -i, <i>f</i> .
how?	quomodo (also relative) ?
how great? how much?	quantus, -a, -um (also relative)
how many?	quot (also relative) ?
imperative	imperativus, -a, -um.
imperfect	imperfectus, -a, -um.
impersonal	impersonālis, -e.
in English	Anglice.
inflect	inflecto (3).
in Gallic, in French .	Gallice.
in Greek	Graece.
in Latin	Latīne.
increase	cresco (3).
indeclinable	indeclinabilis, -e.
indicative	indicativus (<i>adj.</i> <i>sc.</i> modus).
indirect	indirectus, -a, -um; obliquus, -a, -um.
indirect discourse . .	oratio oblīqua.
infinitive	infinitīvus, -a, -um.

instrument	instrumentum, -i.
interjection	interjectio, -ōnis, <i>f.</i>
intransitive	intransitīvus, -a, -um.
irregular	irregulāris, -e.
janitor	janitor, -ōris, <i>m.</i>
Latin	Latīnus, -a, -um; <i>in Latin, Latīne.</i>
labial	labiālis, -e.
language	lingua, -ae, <i>f.</i>; sermo, sermōnis.
learn	disco (3), didici.
letter (of the alphabet)	litera, -ae, <i>f.</i>
letter (a written document)	litterae, <i>pl.</i>, and epistola, -ae, <i>f.</i>
library	librarium, -ii, <i>n.</i>
limit	limito (1).
lingual	linguālis, -e (assumed).
liquid	liquidus, -a, -um.
locative	locatīvus, -a, -um.
long	longus, -a, -um; productus, -a, -um.
man	homo, -inis, <i>m.</i>; vir, -i, <i>m.</i>
manner	modus, -i, <i>m.</i>
masculine	masculīnus, -a, -um.
mean	significo (1).
means	instrumentum, -i, <i>n.</i>
meaning	significatio, -ōnis, <i>f.</i>
mistake (noun)	error, -ōris, <i>m.</i>
mistake (verb)	erro (1).
mode or mood	modus, -i, <i>m.</i>; status, -us.
monosyllable	monosyllabum, -i, <i>n.</i> (<i>sc. verbum</i>).
morning	mane (<i>indecl.</i>).
mother	mater, -tris.
mute	mutus, -a, -um.
negative	negatīvus, -a, -um.
news	nova, -ōrum, <i>pl. n.</i>
neuter	neuter, -tra, -trum.
no	non, non est, minime, minime vero (by no means, no indeed).
nominative	nominatīvus (<i>adj., sc. casus</i>).
note (noun)	notātum, -i, <i>n.</i> (assumed); annotatio, -ōnis

note (verb)	noto (1).
noun	nomen, nominis, <i>n.</i>
numeral	numerālis, -e.
object (gram. term)	objectum, -i, <i>n.</i> (<i>really adj., sc. verbum</i>) (assumed)
officer	officiālis, -is, <i>m.</i>
open	aperio (4), -rui, -rtum.
open (adj.)	apertus, -a, -um.
optative	optativus (<i>adj., sc. modus</i>).
oration	oratio, -ōnis, <i>f.</i>
ordinal	ordinālis, -e.
page	pagina, -ae.
palatal	palatālis, -e (assumed).
paradigm	paradigma, -atis.
part (of speech)	pars or forma (orationis).
participle	participium, -ii, <i>n.</i>
partitive	partitīvus, -a, -um.
passive (see <i>voice</i>)	
perfect	perfectus, -a -um.
periphrastic	circuitus, -a, -um.
person	pērsōna, -ae.
personal	personālis, -e.
phrase	locutio, -ōnis, <i>f.</i> ; phrasis, -is, <i>f.</i>
play (noun)	lusio, -ōnis, <i>f.</i>
play (verb)	ludo (3).
pluperfect	plusquam perfectum (<i>adj., sc. tempus</i>).
plural	plurālis, -e.
positive	positīvus, -a, -um.
practice (noun)	exercitatio, -ōnis, <i>f.</i>
practice (verb)	exercito (1).
predicate	praedicatīvus, -a, -um (<i>sc. pars or res</i>).
prefer	malo, malle, malui.
preparatory	praepparatorius, -a, -um.
preposition	praepositio, -ōnis, <i>f.</i>
present (adj.)	praesens, -entis.
president	praeses, -idis, <i>m.</i>
principal parts	partes primae, or primariae.
prize	donum, -i, <i>n.</i>
professor	professor, -ōris, <i>m.</i>
pronoun	pronomen, -inis, <i>n.</i>
proper	proprius, -a, -um.

pupil	discipulus, -i, <i>m.</i>
purpose	finis, -is, <i>m.</i>
quality	qualitas, -ātis.
quantity	quantitas, -ātis, <i>f.</i> ; copia, -ae, <i>f.</i>
question	quaestio, -ōnis, <i>f.</i> ; interrogatio, -ōnis.
rains (it rains)	pluit.
read	lego (3).
recitation	recitatio, -ōnis, <i>f.</i>
recite	recito (1).
reference	relatio, -ōnis, <i>f.</i>
reflexive	reflexivum (verbum <i>aut</i> pronomen).
regular	regulāris, -e.
relative	relativus, -a, -um.
remember	memoria teneo, reminiscor (3).
reply	respondeo (2), -di, -sum.
result	consecutio, -ōnis, <i>f.</i> ; eventus, -us, <i>m.</i>
review (noun)	recognitio, -ōnis.
review (verb)	recognosco (3), -novi, -nitum ; (review lesson) pensum recognoscendum.
roof	tectum, -i, <i>n.</i>
root	radix, -icis, <i>f.</i>
rule (noun)	regula, -ae, <i>f.</i>
rule (verb)	rego (3).
school	ludus, -i, <i>m.</i> ; schola, -ae, <i>f.</i>
search for	investigo (1).
secondary	secundarius, -a, -um.
sentence	sententia, -ae, <i>f.</i>
separation	separatio, -ōnis.
sequence	continuatio, -ōnis.
short	brevis, -e.
sibilant	sibilus, -a, -um.
sick	aeger, -gra, -grum ; aegrōtus, -a, -um.
singular	singulāris, -e.
sister	soror, -ōris, <i>f.</i>
sit	sedeo (2), sedi, sessus.
sound	sonus, -i, <i>m.</i>
specification	respectus, -us, <i>m.</i>
speech	oratio, -ōnis (see <i>part of speech</i>).
stand	sto (1), steti, status.

statement	assertio, -ōnis, <i>f</i> .
stem	basis, -is, <i>f</i> .
study (noun)	studium, -i, <i>n</i> .
study (verb)	studeo (2), studui.
substantive	substantivum, -i, <i>n</i> .
substantively	substantive.
subject	{ subjectiva (<i>adj.</i> , <i>sc.</i> pars vel res). { subjectivum (<i>adj.</i> , <i>sc.</i> verbum).
subjunctive	subjunctivus, -a, -um.
subjunctive of character- istic	subjunctivus descriptiōnis.
subordinate	subjectus, -a, -um.
suffice	sufficio (3); <i>it is sufficient</i> , sufficit, satis est.
superlative	superlativus, -a, -um.
supine	supinum (<i>adj.</i> , <i>sc.</i> verbum).
supper	vesperna, -ae, <i>f</i> .
syllable	syllaba, -ae, <i>f</i> .
syntax	syntaxis, -is, <i>f</i> .
table	mensa, -ae, <i>f</i> .
teacher	magister, -tri, <i>m</i> .; magistra, -ae, <i>f</i> .; prae- ceptor, -ōris, <i>m</i> .
temporal	temporalis, -e.
tense	tempus, -oris, <i>n</i> .
term	terminus, -i, <i>m</i> .
termination	terminatio, -ōnis, <i>f</i> .
text	textus, -us, <i>m</i> .
thence	illinc.
there	illic.
thither	illuc.
to-day	hodie.
to-morrow	cras.
transitive	transitivus, -a, -um.
translate into Latin . . .	in Latīnum verte (transfer, redde).
treat	tracto (1).
tutor	tutor, -ōris, <i>m</i> .
university	universitas, -ātis, <i>f</i> .
vacation, holidays . . .	feriae, -ārum, <i>f</i> .
verb	verbum, -i, <i>n</i> .
vocabulary	vocabularium, -i, <i>n</i> .

vocative	vocativus (<i>adj.</i> , <i>sc. casus</i>).
voice	vox , -cis, <i>f</i> .
voice (gram.)	modus , -i, <i>m</i> .
voice, active	faciendi modus , LXIII., <i>n</i> .
voice, passive	patiendi modus .
vowel	vocālis (<i>adj.</i> , <i>sc. litera</i>).
walk	ambulo (1).
water	aqua , -ae, <i>f</i> .
well, be well, in good health	valeo (2), -ui.
what kind of? (<i>relative</i> , of which kind) . . .	qualis , -e.
when	cum ; <i>interrog.</i> , quando .
whence?	unde (<i>also relative</i>).
where?	ubi, quo in loco (<i>also relative</i>).
which?	quis et qui, quae, quod (<i>also relative</i>).
whither?	quo (<i>also relative</i>).
why?	cur, quare, qua de causa (<i>also relative</i>).
window	fenestra , -ae, <i>f</i> .
wish	volo, velle, volui .
woman	mulier, mulieris , <i>f</i> .
word	verbum , -i, <i>n</i> .; vox, vocis , <i>f</i> .
yesterday	heri (<i>adv.</i>), hesterno die .
yes	certe, certissimo, ita, ita est, ista sunt .

[illegible]

Demco 293-5

BOSTON UNIVERSITY



1 1719 02753 7432

